

# CARRIAGE SERVICES INC

## FORM S-3

(Securities Registration Statement (simplified form))

Filed 04/10/17

Address	3040 POST OAK BOULEVARD SUITE 300 HOUSTON, TX 77056
Telephone	713-332-8400
CIK	0001016281
Symbol	CSV
SIC Code	7200 - Services-Personal Services
Industry	Personal Services
Sector	Consumer Non-Cyclicals
Fiscal Year	12/31

---

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

---

**Form S-3**  
**REGISTRATION STATEMENT**  
*UNDER*  
*THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933*

---

**CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)  
(See Table of Additional Registrants)

---

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**76-0423828**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300**  
**Houston, Texas 77056**  
**(713) 332-8400**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

---

**Viki King Blinderman**  
**Senior Vice President, Principal Financial Officer, Chief Accounting Officer and Secretary**  
**3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300**  
**Houston, Texas 77056**  
**(713) 332-8400**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

---

*Copies to:*

**Nick D. Nicholas**  
**Porter Hedges LLP**  
**1000 Main, 36th Floor**  
**Houston, Texas 77002**  
**Telephone: (713) 226-6674**

---

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: From time to time after this registration statement becomes effective.

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

[Table of Contents](#)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of “large accelerated filer,” “accelerated filer” and “smaller reporting company” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer  Accelerated filer   
Non-accelerated filer  (Do not check if a smaller reporting company) Smaller reporting company

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

Title of Each Class of Securities to be Registered(1)	Amount to be Registered	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price per Unit	Proposed Maximum Offering Price	Amount of Registration Fee
Debt Securities(2)				
Common Stock, par value \$0.01 per share				
Preferred Stock, par value \$0.01 per share				
Depository Shares(3)				
Warrants				
Subscription Rights				
Purchase Contracts				
Units				
Guarantees of Debt Securities(4)				
Total			\$350,000,000(5)	\$40,565(6)(7)

- (1) The securities registered consist of \$350,000,000 of an indeterminate number or amount of Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depository Shares, Warrants, Subscription Rights, Purchase Contracts and Units, as may be issued from time to time at indeterminate prices. In no event will the aggregate initial offering price of all securities issued from time to time pursuant to this registration statement exceed \$350,000,000 or the equivalent thereof in foreign currencies, foreign currency units or composite currencies. This registration statement also covers an indeterminate amount of securities registered hereunder and listed in the “Calculation of Registration Fee” table above as may be issued in exchange for, or upon conversion or exercise of, as the case may be, the securities registered hereunder and listed in the “Calculation of Registration Fee” table above.
- (2) If any Debt Securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price of the Debt Securities shall be in such amount as shall result in an aggregate initial offering price not to exceed \$350,000,000 less the offering price of any security previously issued hereunder.
- (3) Such indeterminate number of Depository Shares to be evidenced by Depository Receipts issued pursuant to a deposit agreement. In the event that the registrant elects to offer to the public fractional interests in shares of Preferred Stock registered hereunder, Depository Receipts will be distributed to those persons purchasing the fractional interests and the shares of Preferred Stock will be issued to the depository under the deposit agreement.
- (4) Subsidiaries of Carriage Services, Inc. named as Additional Registrants may fully, irrevocably and unconditionally guarantee, on an unsecured basis, the Debt Securities. Pursuant Rule 457(n), no separate registration fee is payable with respect to the Guarantees of Debt Securities.
- (5) The proposed maximum aggregate offering price has been estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(o) of the Securities Act of 1933.
- (6) Calculated in accordance with Rule 457(o) of the Securities Act of 1933.
- (7) This registration statement includes unsold Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depository Shares, Warrants, Subscription Rights, Purchase Contracts and Units to be issued by Carriage Services, Inc. and the subsidiaries thereof in a primary offering (the “Unsold Securities”) with an aggregate offering price of \$350,000,000 that were previously covered by registration statement no. 333-195083 declared effective on April 25, 2014 (the “Prior Registration Statement”). Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) of the Securities Act, the \$45,080 filing fee previously paid in connection with such Unsold Securities will continue to be applied to such Unsold Securities. As a result, no fee is being paid in connection with the initial filing of this registration statement. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), the offering of the Unsold Securities covered by the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this registration statement. To the extent that that, after the filing date hereof and prior to the effectiveness of this registration statement, any Unsold Securities are sold pursuant to the Prior Registration Statement, the registrant will identify in a pre-effective amendment to this registration statement the updated amount of Unsold Securities from the Prior Registration Statement to be included in this registration statement pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6).

**The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

**T ABLE OF A DDITIONAL R EGISTRANTS**

The following subsidiaries of Carriage Services, Inc. are additional registrants under this registration statement:

<b><u>Exact Name of Additional Registrants</u></b>	<b><u>State of Incorporation or Organization</u></b>	<b><u>I.R.S Employer Identification Number</u></b>
Carriage Funeral Holdings, Inc.	Delaware	76-0339922
CFS Funeral Services, Inc.	Delaware	76-0386580
Carriage Holding Company, Inc.	Delaware	76-0393194
Carriage Funeral Services of Michigan, Inc.	Michigan	38-3149715
Carriage Funeral Services of Kentucky, Inc.	Kentucky	61-1015339
Carriage Funeral Services of California, Inc.	California	76-0517196
Carriage Cemetery Services of Idaho, Inc.	Idaho	82-0210596
Wilson & Kratzer Mortuaries	California	94-2677490
Rolling Hills Memorial Park	California	94-1495168
Carriage Services of Connecticut, Inc.	Connecticut	06-1491781
CSI Funeral Services of Massachusetts, Inc.	Massachusetts	04-3406556
CHC Insurance Agency of Ohio, Inc.	Ohio	76-0584854
Carriage Services of New Mexico, Inc.	New Mexico	76-0585891
Forastiere Family Funeral Service, Inc.	Massachusetts	76-0615410
Carriage Cemetery Services, Inc.	Texas	76-0592642
Carriage Services of Oklahoma, L.L.C.	Oklahoma	76-0590850
Carriage Services of Nevada, Inc.	Nevada	76-0595471
Hubbard Funeral Home, Inc.	Maryland	53-0226299
Carriage Team California (Cemetery), LLC	Delaware	76-0627583
Carriage Team California (Funeral), LLC	Delaware	76-0627584
Carriage Team Florida (Cemetery), LLC	Delaware	76-0627585
Carriage Team Florida (Funeral), LLC	Delaware	76-0627586
Carriage Services of Ohio, LLC	Delaware	76-0627588
Carriage Team Kansas, LLC	Delaware	76-0627587
Carriage Municipal Cemetery Services of Nevada, Inc.	Nevada	76-0635742
Carriage Cemetery Services of California, Inc.	California	76-0634987
Carriage Insurance Agency of Massachusetts, Inc.	Massachusetts	76-0644470
Carriage Internet Strategies, Inc.	Delaware	76-0642158
Carriage Management, Inc.	Delaware	76-0651824
Cochrane's Chapel of the Roses, Inc.	California	68-0458642
Horizon Cremation Society, Inc.	California	76-0653256
Carriage Life Events, Inc.	Delaware	76-0667598
Carriage Pennsylvania Holdings, Inc.	Delaware	76-0695818
Carriage Funeral Management, Inc.	Delaware	76-0695815
Carriage Florida Holdings, Inc.	Delaware	76-0695816
Cloverdale Park, Inc.	Idaho	82-0251267
Cataudella Funeral Home, Inc.	Massachusetts	04-2588311
Carriage Services Investment Advisors, Inc.	Delaware	45-5172629
Carriage Merger VI, Inc.	Delaware	45-5172743
CSRE Holdings, Inc.	Delaware	45-5172787
PNCA, Inc.	Delaware	45-5172856
Carriage Operations, Inc.	Delaware	45-5172914
Carriage Services of Tennessee, Inc.	Delaware	45-5195328
Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc.	Louisiana	45-4566991

The address and telephone number for each of the additional registrants' principal executive office is c/o Carriage Services, Inc. 3040 Post Oak Boulevard, Suite 300, Houston, Texas 77056; telephone (713) 332-8400.

The name, address and telephone number for the agent for service of each additional registrant is Viki King Blinderman, Senior Vice President, Principal Financial Officer, Chief Accounting Officer and Secretary, c/o Carriage Services, Inc. 3040 Post Oak Boulevard, Suite 300, Houston, Texas 77056; telephone (713) 332-8400.

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED APRIL 10, 2017

PROSPECTUS

# CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.

**\$350,000,000**

---

**Debt Securities  
Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Depositary Shares  
Warrants  
Subscription Rights  
Purchase Contracts  
Units  
Guarantees of Debt Securities**

---

We may offer from time to time debt securities, shares of our common stock, shares of our preferred stock, depositary shares, warrants, subscription rights, purchase contracts and units that may include any of these securities. Debt securities we issue under this prospectus may be guaranteed by certain of our subsidiaries.

The aggregate initial offering price of the securities that we offer will not exceed \$350,000,000. We will offer the securities in amounts, at prices and on terms to be determined at the time of the offering.

Our common stock is quoted on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol "CSV." The last reported sale price of our common stock on April 7, 2017 was \$26.86 per share.

We may offer and sell these securities to or through one or more underwriters, dealers and agents, or directly to purchasers, on a continuous or delayed basis. We will provide the specific terms of offerings of these securities in supplements to this prospectus. You should read this prospectus and any supplement carefully before you invest. This prospectus may not be used to offer and sell our securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

**Investing in our securities involves significant risks that are described in the "[Risk Factors](#)" section beginning on page 4 of this prospectus.**

---

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2017.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</a>	i
<a href="#">CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.</a>	1
<a href="#">CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	1
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	3
<a href="#">INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE</a>	3
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	4
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	5
<a href="#">DILUTION</a>	5
<a href="#">RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES</a>	5
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</a>	6
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK</a>	17
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES</a>	20
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS</a>	22
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS</a>	24
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF PURCHASE CONTRACTS</a>	25
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF UNITS</a>	26
<a href="#">FORMS OF SECURITIES</a>	27
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	29
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	32
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	32

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the Commission or the SEC, utilizing a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may sell any combination of the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings up to a total dollar amount of \$350 million. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we sell securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of the offering and the offered securities. This prospectus, together with applicable prospectus supplements, any information incorporated by reference, and any related free writing prospectuses we file with the Commission, includes all material information relating to these offerings and securities. We may also add, update or change in the prospectus supplement any of the information contained in this prospectus or in the documents that we have incorporated by reference into this prospectus, including without limitation, a discussion of any risk factors or other special considerations that apply to these offerings or securities or the specific plan of distribution. If there is any inconsistency between the information in this prospectus and a prospectus supplement or information incorporated by reference having a later date, you should rely on the information in that prospectus supplement or incorporated information having a later date. We urge you to read carefully this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, together with the information incorporated herein by reference as described under the heading “Incorporation of Certain Documents By Reference” and the additional information described under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information,” before buying any of the securities being offered.

You should rely only on the information we have provided or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different information. No dealer, salesperson or other person is authorized to give any information or to represent anything not contained in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectus.

**Neither the delivery of this prospectus nor any sale made under it implies that there has been no change in our affairs or that the information in this prospectus is correct as of any date after the date of**

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**this prospectus. You should assume that the information in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectus is accurate only as of the date on the front of the document and that any information we have incorporated by reference is accurate only as of the date of the document incorporated by reference, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectus, or any sale of a security.**

The registration statement containing this prospectus, including exhibits to the registration statement, provides additional information about us and the securities offered under this prospectus and any prospectus supplement. We have filed and plan to continue to file other documents with the Commission that contain information about us and our business. Also, we will file legal documents that control the terms of the securities offered by this prospectus as exhibits to the reports that we file with the Commission. The registration statement and other reports can be read at the Commission website or at the Commission offices mentioned under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information.”

This prospectus contains summaries of certain provisions contained in some of the documents described herein, but reference is made to the actual documents for complete information. All of the summaries are qualified in their entirety by the actual documents. Copies of some of the documents referred to herein have been filed, will be filed or will be incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and you may obtain copies of those documents as described below under “Where You Can Find More Information.”

## CARRIAGE SERVICES, Inc.

As used in this prospectus, the terms “we,” “us,” “our” and the “Company” mean Carriage Services, Inc., a Delaware corporation, and its consolidated subsidiaries, unless the context indicates otherwise.

Carriage Services, Inc. was incorporated in the State of Delaware in December 1993 and is a leading provider of funeral and cemetery services and merchandise in the United States. We operate in two business segments: funeral home operations, which currently account for approximately 76% of our total revenue, and cemetery operations, which currently account for approximately 24% of our total revenue.

Our funeral homes offer a complete range of services to meet a family’s deathcare needs, including consultation, the removal and preparation of remains, the sale of caskets and related funeral merchandise, the use of funeral home facilities for visitation and services and transportation services. Our cemeteries are primarily sales businesses that sell interment rights (grave sites and mausoleum spaces) and related merchandise, such as markers and outer burial containers.

At December 31, 2016, we operated 170 funeral homes in 28 states and 32 cemeteries in 11 states. We compete with other public funeral and cemetery companies and smaller, independent operators. We believe we are a market leader (first or second) in most of our markets. We provide funeral and cemetery services and products on both an “at-need” (time of death) and “preneed” (planned prior to death) basis.

Our principal executive offices are located at 3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300, Houston, Texas 77056. Our telephone number is (713) 332-8400. Our website is located at [www.carriageservices.com](http://www.carriageservices.com). Information on our website does not constitute part of this prospectus and should not be relied upon in connection with making any decision with respect to an investment in our securities. We are required to file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. You may read and copy any documents filed by us with the SEC at the SEC’s Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. Our filings with the SEC are also available to the public from commercial document retrieval services and at the SEC’s website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

### CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Certain statements in this prospectus and in the documents we incorporate by reference herein may constitute “forward-looking” statements as defined in Section 27A of the Securities Act, Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 (“PSLRA”), or in releases made by the SEC, all as may be amended from time to time. Such forward-looking statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other important factors that could cause actual results, performance or achievements of Carriage and our subsidiaries to differ materially from any future results, performance or achievements expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements. Statements that are not historical fact are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements can be identified by, among other things, the use of forward-looking language, such as the words “plan,” “believe,” “expect,” “anticipate,” “intend,” “estimate,” “project,” “may,” “will,” “would,” “could,” “should,” “seeks,” “scheduled to,” or other similar words, or the negative of these terms or other variations of these terms or comparable language, or by discussion of strategy or intentions. These cautionary statements are being made pursuant to the Securities Act, the Exchange Act and the PSLRA with the intention of obtaining the benefits of the “safe harbor” provisions of such laws. When considering these forward-looking statements, you should keep in mind the risk factors and other cautionary statements included in this prospectus and the documents we incorporate by reference herein. Please read “Risk Factors” beginning on page 4 of this prospectus. The risk factors and other factors noted throughout this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference could cause our actual results to differ materially from those contained in any forward-looking statement.



---

[Table of Contents](#)

The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus and in the documents we incorporate herein by reference are largely based on our expectations, which reflect estimates and assumptions made by our management. These estimates and assumptions reflect our best judgment based on currently known market conditions and other factors. Although we believe such estimates and assumptions to be reasonable, they are inherently uncertain and involve a number of risks and uncertainties that are beyond our control including:

- our ability to find and retain skilled personnel;
- our ability to execute our growth strategy;
- the effects of competition;
- the execution of our Standards Operating, 4E leadership and Standard Acquisition Models;
- changes in the number of deaths in our markets;
- changes in consumer preferences;
- our ability to generate preneed sales;
- the investment performance of our funeral and cemetery trust funds;
- fluctuations in interest rates;
- our ability to obtain debt or equity financing on satisfactory terms to fund additional acquisitions, expansion projects, working capital requirements and the repayment or refinancing of indebtedness;
- death benefits related to preneed funeral contracts funded through life insurance contracts;
- the financial condition of third-party insurance companies that fund our preneed funeral contracts;
- increased or unanticipated costs, such as insurance or taxes;
- effects of the application of applicable laws and regulations, including changes in such regulations or the interpretation thereof;
- consolidation of the funeral and cemetery industry; and
- other factors and uncertainties inherent in the funeral and cemetery industry.

In addition, management's assumptions about future events may prove to be inaccurate. All readers are cautioned that the forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus and in the documents we incorporate herein by reference are not guarantees of future performance, and we cannot assure any reader that such statements will be realized or that the forward-looking events and circumstances will occur. Actual results may differ materially from those anticipated or implied in the forward-looking statements due to factors described under the heading "Risk Factors" in this prospectus and elsewhere in the documents we incorporate herein by reference. All forward-looking statements speak only as of the date they are made. We do not intend to update or revise any forward-looking statements as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. These cautionary statements qualify all forward-looking statements attributable to us or persons acting on our behalf.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

This prospectus forms a part of a registration statement on Form S-3 we filed with the SEC. This prospectus does not contain all of the information found in the registration statement. For further information regarding us and our securities, you may desire to review the full registration statement, including its exhibits and schedules, filed under the Securities Act, as well as our proxy statement, annual, quarterly and other reports and other information we file with the SEC. You may read and copy any document we file with the SEC at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the public reference room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. The SEC maintains a website on the Internet at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding companies that file electronically with the SEC. We maintain a website on the Internet at [www.carriageservices.com](http://www.carriageservices.com). Our registration statement, of which this prospectus constitutes a part, can be downloaded from the SEC's website or from our website at [www.carriageservices.com](http://www.carriageservices.com). Information on the SEC website, our website or any other website is not incorporated by reference in this prospectus and does not constitute part of this prospectus.

## INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE

The rules of the SEC allow us to "incorporate by reference" into this prospectus the information we file with the SEC, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to that information. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be part of this prospectus, and later information that we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede that information. We incorporate by reference the documents listed below:

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016, filed with the SEC on February 23, 2017, including the portions of our Definitive Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A filed with the SEC on April 5, 2017, incorporated by reference therein;
- A description of our common stock contained in our registration statement on Form 8-A, filed with the SEC on December 4, 2002; and
- Our Current Reports on Form 8-K or Form 8-K/A, filed with the SEC on January 30, 2017, February 15, 2017, and March 23, 2017 (excluding any information furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or Item 7.01, or any corresponding information furnished under Item 9.01, of any such Current Report on Form 8-K).

All documents filed by us pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act (excluding any information furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or Item 7.01, or any corresponding information furnished under Item 9.01, on any Current Report on Form 8-K) after the date of the initial registration statement and prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement and after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of each offering under this prospectus shall be deemed to be incorporated in this prospectus by reference and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of such documents.

Any statement contained in this prospectus or in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document which also is or is deemed to be incorporated by reference modifies or supersedes the statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus.

This prospectus incorporates documents by reference that are not delivered with this prospectus. Copies of these documents, other than the exhibits to the documents (unless such exhibits are specifically incorporated by reference in such documents), are available upon written or oral request, at no charge, from us. Requests for such copies should be directed to Carriage Services, Inc., 3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300, Houston, Texas 77056; telephone number (713) 332-8400.

## **RISK FACTORS**

An investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the risk factors and all of the other information included in, or incorporated by reference into, this prospectus, including those risk factors included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, and our subsequent Commission filings, in evaluating an investment in our securities. If any of these risks were to occur, our business, financial condition or results of operations could be adversely affected. In that case, the trading price of our securities could decline and you could lose all or part of your investment. When we offer and sell any securities pursuant to a prospectus supplement, we may include additional risk factors relevant to such securities in the prospectus supplement.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless we inform you otherwise in the prospectus supplement or any pricing supplement, we will use the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered by us for general corporate purposes. These purposes may include capital expenditures, repayment or refinancing of indebtedness, acquisitions and repurchases and redemptions of securities. Pending any specific application, we may initially invest funds in short-term marketable securities or apply them to the reduction of indebtedness.

## DILUTION

Our net tangible book value at December 31, 2016 was \$(6.76) per share of common stock. Net tangible book value per share of common stock is determined by dividing our tangible net worth, which is tangible assets less liabilities, by the total number of shares of our common stock outstanding. If we offer shares of our common stock, purchasers of our common stock in that offering may experience immediate dilution in net tangible book value per share. The prospectus supplement relating to an offering of shares of our common stock will set forth the information regarding any dilutive effect of that offering.

## RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES

Our consolidated ratio of earnings to fixed charges for each of the periods indicated were as follows:

	Fiscal year ended December 31,				
	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges	1.87	2.65	2.83	3.72	3.34

## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

Our debt securities, consisting of notes, debentures or other evidences of indebtedness, may be issued from time to time in one or more series:

- in the case of senior debt securities, under a senior indenture to be entered into among us, the guarantors of those securities, if any, and a trustee we will identify in a prospectus supplement; and
- in the case of subordinated debt securities, under a subordinated indenture to be entered into among us, the guarantors of those securities, if any, and a trustee we will identify in a prospectus supplement.

Any such senior indenture or subordinated indenture will be substantially in the form included as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Because the following is only a summary of the indentures and the debt securities, it does not contain all information that you may find useful. For further information about the indentures and the debt securities, we urge you to read the indentures, the forms of securities, the applicable prospectus supplements and the applicable supplemental indentures.

As used in this section of the prospectus and under the captions “Description of Capital Stock,” “Description of Depositary Shares,” “Description of Warrants,” “Description of Subscription Rights,” “Description of Purchase Contracts,” and “Description of Units,” the terms “we,” “us,” “our,” the “Company” and “Carriage” mean Carriage Services, Inc. only, and not the subsidiaries of Carriage Services, Inc. Capitalized terms not otherwise defined in this Description of Debt Securities have the meanings given to them in the aforementioned indentures.

Unless otherwise specified in a prospectus supplement, any debt securities we offer will be our direct, unsecured general obligations. The debt securities will be either senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities, either of which may be issued in registered or global form. The senior debt securities will rank equally with all of our other senior and unsubordinated debt. The subordinated debt securities will be subordinated in right of payment to certain of our senior debt. In general, this means that if we declare bankruptcy, holders of the senior debt securities and certain other senior debt will be paid in full before the holders of subordinated debt securities will receive any payment on their securities. Non-convertible debt securities may be fully, irrevocably and unconditionally guaranteed, on a joint and several basis, by some or all of our subsidiaries, other than “minor” subsidiaries as such term is interpreted in securities regulations governing financial reporting for guarantors.

We conduct substantially all of our operations through our subsidiaries. Consequently, our ability to repay our obligations, including our obligation to pay interest on the debt securities, to repay the principal amount of the debt securities at maturity or upon redemption, or to buy back the securities, depends to a certain extent upon our ability to receive cash flow from our subsidiaries. That is, we will depend upon our subsidiaries’ earnings and their distributions of those earnings to us, and upon our subsidiaries repayment of investments and advances we have made to them to meet our obligations under the debt securities and our other obligations. Our subsidiaries are separate and distinct legal entities and, except to the extent our subsidiaries guarantee the non-convertible debt securities, have no obligation, contingent or otherwise, to pay any amounts due on the debt securities or to make funds available to us to do so.

Generally, the debt securities will be effectively subordinated to all existing and future secured indebtedness of our subsidiaries and us and to all existing and future indebtedness of all non-guarantor subsidiaries. This means that our rights and the rights of our creditors, including the holders of our debt securities, to receive any of the cash or other assets of any subsidiary upon its liquidation or reorganization or otherwise are necessarily subject to the superior claims of creditors of the subsidiary, except to the extent that we or our creditors may be recognized as creditors of the subsidiary. Our subsidiaries’ ability to pay dividends or make other payments or

---

[Table of Contents](#)

advances to us will also depend upon their operating results and will be subject to applicable laws and contractual restrictions. Unless otherwise specified in an applicable prospectus supplement, the indentures do not limit our subsidiaries' ability to enter into other agreements that prohibit or restrict dividends or other payments or advances to us.

The indentures do not limit the aggregate principal amount of debt securities that can be issued. The debt securities may be issued in one or more series as we may authorize from time to time. A prospectus supplement and a supplemental indenture relating to the offering of a particular series of debt securities will set forth the specific terms of the offered debt securities.

These terms will include some or all of the following:

- the title of the debt securities and whether they are subordinated debt securities or senior debt securities;
- any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities;
- the ability to issue additional debt securities of the same series;
- the price or prices at which we will sell the debt securities;
- the maturity date or dates of the debt securities;
- the rate or rates of interest, if any, which may be fixed or variable, at which the debt securities will bear interest, or the method of determining such rate or rates, if any;
- the date or dates from which any interest will accrue or the method by which such date or dates will be determined;
- in the case of discount debt securities, the rate of accretion of principal, which may be fixed or variable, or the method of determining such rate, and the date or dates from which principal will accrete or the method by which such date or dates will be determined;
- the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of any such deferral period, including the maximum consecutive period during which interest payment periods may be extended;
- the dates on which we will pay interest on the debt securities and the regular record date for determining who is entitled to the interest payable on any interest payment date;
- the place or places where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the debt securities will be payable, where any securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer, exchange or conversion, as applicable, and notices and demands may be delivered to or upon us pursuant to the indenture;
- if we possess the option to do so, the periods within which and the prices at which we may redeem the debt securities, in whole or in part, pursuant to optional redemption provisions, and the other terms and conditions of any such provisions;
- our obligation, if any, to redeem, repay or purchase debt securities by making periodic payments to a sinking fund or through an analogous provision or at the option of holders of the debt securities, and the period or periods within which and the price or prices at which we will redeem, repay or purchase the debt securities, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation, and the other terms and conditions of such obligation;
- the denominations in which the debt securities will be issued, if other than denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000;
- whether the amount of payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the debt securities may be determined with reference to any index, formula or other method, such as one or more

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices, and the manner of determining the amount of such payments;
- the portion, or methods of determining the portion, of the principal amount of the debt securities which we must pay upon the acceleration of the maturity of the debt securities in connection with an Event of Default (as described below), if other than the full principal amount;
  - provisions, if any, granting special rights to holders of the debt securities upon the occurrence of specified events;
  - any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or our covenants with respect to the applicable series of debt securities, and whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with those contained in the applicable indenture;
  - any limitation on our ability to incur debt, redeem stock, sell our assets or other restrictions;
  - the application, if any, of the terms of the indenture relating to legal defeasance and covenant defeasance (which terms are described below) to the debt securities;
  - whether the subordination provisions summarized below or different subordination provisions will apply to the debt securities;
  - the terms, if any, upon which the holders may convert or exchange (or upon which we may require the holders to convert or exchange) the debt securities into or for common stock, preferred stock or other securities or property of ours or of another person (or upon which such debt securities shall automatically convert or be exchanged into or for such other securities or property);
  - whether any of the debt securities will be issued in global form and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which global debt securities may be exchanged for certificated debt securities;
  - any change in the right of the trustee or the requisite holders of debt securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable because of an Event of Default;
  - the depository for global or certificated debt securities;
  - any trustees, authenticating or paying agents, transfer agents or registrars or other agents with respect to the debt securities;
  - to whom any interest on any debt security shall be payable, if other than the person in whose name the security is registered, on the record date for such interest, the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global debt security will be paid if other than in the manner provided in the applicable indenture;
  - if the principal of or any premium or interest on any debt securities of the series is to be payable in one or more currencies or currency units other than as stated, the currency, currencies or currency units in which it shall be paid and the periods within and terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amounts payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined);
  - the collateral, if any, securing such debt securities, and the guarantors, if any, who will guarantee such non-convertible debt securities, or the methods of determining such collateral, if any, and such guarantors, if any;
  - the portion of the principal amount of any securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity of the debt securities pursuant to the applicable indenture if other than the entire principal amount;
  - if the principal amount payable at the stated maturity of any debt security of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the stated maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such securities as of any such date for any purpose, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any maturity other than the stated maturity or which shall be deemed to be outstanding as of any date prior to the stated maturity (or, in

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined);
- to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of the indentures to such extent as shall be necessary to add any of our subsidiaries as a co-issuer of debt securities of an applicable series; and
  - any other terms of the debt securities not inconsistent with the provisions of the indentures, as amended or supplemented.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the debt securities will be issued in fully-registered form without coupons.

Debt securities may be sold at a substantial discount below their stated principal amount, bearing no interest or interest at a rate which at the time of issuance is below market rates. The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the federal income tax consequences and special considerations applicable to any such debt securities. The debt securities may also be issued as indexed securities or securities denominated in foreign currencies, currency units or composite currencies, as described in more detail in the prospectus supplement relating to any of the particular debt securities. The prospectus supplement relating to specific debt securities will also describe any special considerations and certain additional tax considerations applicable to such debt securities.

### **Subordination**

The prospectus relating to any offering of subordinated debt securities will describe the specific subordination provisions. However, unless otherwise noted in the prospectus supplement, subordinated debt securities will be subordinate and junior in right of payment to any Senior Debt on the terms set forth below:

Under the subordinated indenture, “Senior Debt” means all amounts due on obligations in connection with any of the following, whether outstanding at the date of execution of the subordinated indenture or thereafter incurred or created:

- the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest due on our indebtedness for borrowed money and indebtedness evidenced by securities, debentures, bonds or other similar instruments issued by us (including all mandatory obligations under repurchase agreements for the payment of the repurchase price for the securities purchased pursuant thereto);
- any of our obligations as lessee under leases required to be capitalized on the balance sheet of the lessee under generally accepted accounting principles;
- all of our obligations for the reimbursement on any letter of credit, banker’s acceptance, security purchase facility or similar credit transaction;
- all of our obligations in respect of interest rate swap, cap or other agreements, interest rate future or options contracts, currency swap agreements, currency future or option contracts and other similar agreements;
- all obligations of the types referred to above of other persons for the payment of which we are responsible or liable as obligor, guarantor or otherwise; and
- all obligations of the types referred to above of other persons secured by any lien on any property or asset of ours (whether or not such obligation is assumed by us).

However, Senior Debt does not include:

- any indebtedness which expressly provides that such indebtedness shall not be senior in right of payment to the subordinated debt securities, or that such indebtedness shall be subordinated to any other of our indebtedness, unless such indebtedness expressly provides that such indebtedness shall be senior in right of payment to the subordinated debt securities;



---

[Table of Contents](#)

- any of our indebtedness in respect of the subordinated debt securities;
- any indebtedness or liability for compensation to employees, for goods or materials purchased in the ordinary course of business or for services;
- any of our indebtedness to any subsidiary; or
- any liability for federal, state, local or other taxes owed or owing by us.

Senior Debt shall continue to be Senior Debt and be entitled to the benefits of the subordination provisions irrespective of any amendment, modification or waiver of any term of such Senior Debt.

If we default in the payment of any principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Senior Debt when it becomes due and payable, whether at maturity or at a date fixed for prepayment or by declaration or otherwise, then, unless and until such default is cured or waived or ceases to exist, we will make no direct or indirect payment (in cash, property, securities, by set-off or otherwise but excluding payments in securities which are subordinate in right of payment to all then outstanding Senior Debt, or “Junior Securities”) in respect of the principal of or interest on the subordinated debt securities or in respect of any redemption, retirement, purchase or other acquisition of any of the subordinated debt securities.

In the event of the acceleration of the maturity of any subordinated debt securities, the holders of all senior debt securities outstanding at the time of such acceleration, subject to any security interest, will first be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due on the senior debt securities before the holders of the subordinated debt securities will be entitled to receive any payment of principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the subordinated debt securities.

If any of the following events occur, we will pay in full all Senior Debt before we make any payment or distribution under the subordinated debt securities, whether in cash, securities or other property, to any holder of subordinated debt securities:

- any dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization of Carriage (or relating to our property), whether voluntary or involuntary or in bankruptcy, insolvency or receivership;
- any general assignment by us for the benefit of creditors; or
- any other marshaling of our assets or liabilities.

In such event, any payment or distribution under the subordinated debt securities, whether in cash, securities or other property, which would otherwise (but for the subordination provisions) be payable or deliverable in respect of the subordinated debt securities, will be paid or delivered directly to the holders of Senior Debt in accordance with the priorities then existing among such holders until all Senior Debt has been paid in full. If any payment or distribution under the subordinated debt securities is received by the trustee of any subordinated debt securities in contravention of any of the terms of the subordinated indenture and before all the Senior Debt has been paid in full (other than permitted payments in Junior Securities), such payment or distribution or security will be received in trust for the benefit of, and paid over or delivered and transferred to, the holders of the Senior Debt at the time outstanding in accordance with the priorities then existing among such holders for application to the payment of all Senior Debt remaining unpaid to the extent necessary to pay all such Senior Debt in full.

The subordinated indenture does not limit the issuance of additional Senior Debt.

### **Subsidiary Guarantees**

If specified in the prospectus supplement, our guarantor subsidiaries will guarantee the non-convertible debt securities of a series. Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement, the following provisions will apply to the guarantees of the guarantor subsidiaries.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

Subject to the limitations described below and in the prospectus supplement, the guarantor subsidiaries will, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally guarantee the punctual payment when due, whether at the maturity date, by acceleration or otherwise, of all our payment obligations under the indentures and the non-convertible debt securities of a series, whether for principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the non-convertible debt securities or otherwise. The guarantor subsidiaries will also pay all expenses (including reasonable counsel fees and expenses) incurred by the applicable trustee in enforcing any rights under a guarantee with respect to a guarantor subsidiary.

In the case of subordinated non-convertible debt securities, a guarantee of a guarantor subsidiary will be subordinated in right of payment to the senior debt of such guarantor subsidiary on the same basis as the subordinated non-convertible debt securities are subordinated to our senior debt. No payment will be made by any guarantor subsidiary under its guarantee during any period in which payments by us on the subordinated non-convertible debt securities are suspended by the subordination provisions of the subordinated indenture.

Each guarantee of a guarantor subsidiary will be limited to an amount not to exceed the maximum amount that can be guaranteed by the relevant guarantor subsidiary without rendering such guarantee voidable under applicable law relating to fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally.

Each guarantee of a guarantor subsidiary will be a continuing guarantee and will:

- remain in full force and effect until either (a) payment in full of all the applicable non-convertible debt securities (or such non-convertible debt securities are otherwise satisfied and discharged in accordance with the provisions of the applicable indenture) or (b) released as described in the following paragraph;
- be binding upon each guarantor subsidiary; and
- inure to the benefit of and be enforceable by the applicable trustee, the holders of the non-convertible debt securities and their successors, transferees and assigns.

In the event that a guarantor subsidiary ceases to be our subsidiary, or all or substantially all of the assets or all of the capital stock of any guarantor subsidiary is sold or disposed of, including by way of sale, merger, consolidation or otherwise, such guarantor subsidiary will be released and discharged of its obligations under its guarantee without any further action required on the part of the trustee or any holder of the non-convertible debt securities, and no other person acquiring or owning the assets or capital stock of such guarantor subsidiary will be required to enter into a guarantee. If legal or covenant defeasance occurs with respect to the non-convertible debt securities of any series, all the guarantor subsidiaries will be released and discharged from their obligations under their guarantees. In addition, the prospectus supplement may specify additional circumstances under which a guarantor subsidiary can be released from its guarantee.

#### **Consolidation, Merger, Sale of Assets and Other Transactions**

We may not merge with or into or consolidate with another entity or sell, assign, transfer, lease or convey all or substantially all of our properties and assets to, any other entity other than a direct or indirect wholly owned subsidiary of ours, and no entity may merge with or into or consolidate with us or, except for any direct or indirect wholly owned subsidiary of ours, sell, assign, transfer, lease or convey all or substantially all of its properties and assets to us, unless:

- we are the surviving corporation or the entity formed by or surviving such merger or consolidation or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease or conveyance has been made, if other than us, has expressly assumed by supplemental indenture all of our obligations under the applicable indenture;
- immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing; and

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- we deliver to the trustee an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that the supplemental indenture complies with the applicable indenture.

**Events of Default, Notice and Waiver**

Unless an accompanying prospectus supplement states otherwise, the following shall constitute "Events of Default" under the indentures with respect to each series of debt securities:

- our failure to pay any interest on any debt security of such series when due and payable, continued for 30 days;
- our failure to pay principal (or premium, if any) on any debt security of such series when due, regardless of whether such payment became due because of maturity, redemption, acceleration or otherwise, or is required by any sinking fund established with respect to such series;
- our failure to observe or perform any other of our covenants or agreements with respect to such debt securities for 90 days after we receive notice of such failure;
- certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization of Carriage; and
- any other Event of Default provided with respect to securities of that series.

If an Event of Default with respect to any debt securities of any series outstanding under an indenture shall occur and be continuing, the trustee under such indenture or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of that series outstanding may declare, by notice as provided in the applicable indenture, the principal amount (or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the debt securities of that series) of all the debt securities of that series outstanding to be due and payable immediately.

However, in the case of an Event of Default involving certain events in bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization, acceleration is automatic. After such acceleration, but before a judgment or decree based on acceleration, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul such acceleration if all Events of Default, other than the nonpayment of accelerated principal, have been cured or waived. Upon the acceleration of the maturity of original issue discount securities, an amount less than the principal amount thereof will become due and payable. Please read the prospectus supplement relating to any original issue discount securities for the particular provisions relating to acceleration of maturity thereof.

Any past default under either indenture with respect to debt securities of any series, and any Event of Default arising therefrom, may be waived by the holders of a majority in principal amount of all debt securities of such series outstanding under such indenture, except in the case of (i) default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any debt securities of such series or (ii) default in respect of a covenant or provision which may not be amended or modified without the consent of the holder of each outstanding debt security of such series affected.

The trustee shall within 90 days after the occurrence of a default (which is actually known to the trustee and is continuing), with respect to the debt securities of any series (without regard to any grace period or notice requirements), to give to the holders of the debt securities of such series notice of such default. The trustee may withhold from the holders notice of any continuing Event of Default, except an Event of Default relating to the payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, if it withholding such notice would be in the interest of the holders.

The trustee, subject to its duties during default to act with the required standard of care, may require indemnification by the holders of the debt securities of any series with respect to which a default has occurred before proceeding to exercise any right or power under the indentures at the request of the requisite holders of the

---

[Table of Contents](#)

debt securities of such series. Subject to such right of indemnification and to certain other limitations, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series under either indenture may direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee with respect to the debt securities of such series, provided that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with the applicable indenture and the trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

No holder of a debt security of any series may institute any action against us under either of the indentures (except actions for payment of overdue principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such debt security or for the conversion or exchange of such debt security in accordance with its terms) unless:

- an Event of Default has occurred and the holder has given to the trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the debt securities of such series specifying an Event of Default, as required under the applicable indenture;
- the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of that series then outstanding under such indenture shall have requested the trustee to institute such action and offered to the trustee indemnity and security satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- the trustee shall not have instituted such action within 60 days of such request; and
- no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the trustee during such 60-day period by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of that series.

We are required to furnish annually to the trustee statements as to our compliance with all conditions and covenants under each indenture.

### **Discharge, Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance**

As set forth below, we may discharge or defease our obligations under the indentures, unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

We may discharge certain obligations to holders of any series of debt securities issued under either the senior indenture or the subordinated indenture which have not already been delivered to the trustee for cancellation and which have either become due and payable or are by their terms due and payable within one year (or scheduled for redemption within one year) by irrevocably depositing with the trustee money in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such debt securities not previously delivered to the trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of debt securities which have become due and payable) or to the stated maturity or redemption date, as the case may be, and we have paid all other sums payable under the applicable indenture.

If indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may elect either (i) to defease and be discharged from any and all obligations with respect to the debt securities of or within any series (except as otherwise provided in the relevant indenture) (“legal defeasance”) or (ii) to be released from our obligations with respect to certain covenants applicable to the debt securities of or within any series (“covenant defeasance”), upon the deposit with the relevant indenture trustee, in trust for such purpose, of money and/or government obligations which through the payment of principal and interest in accordance with their terms will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such debt securities to maturity or redemption, as the case may be, and any mandatory sinking fund or analogous payments thereon. As a condition to legal defeasance or covenant defeasance, we must deliver to the trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the holders of such debt securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such legal defeasance or

---

[Table of Contents](#)

covenant defeasance had not occurred. Such opinion of counsel, in the case of legal defeasance under clause (i) above, must refer to and be based upon a ruling of the Internal Revenue Service or a change in applicable federal income tax law occurring after the date of the relevant indenture. In addition, in the case of either legal defeasance or covenant defeasance, we shall have delivered to the trustee an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent with respect to such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance have been complied with.

We may exercise our legal defeasance option with respect to such debt securities notwithstanding our prior exercise of our covenant defeasance option.

### **Modification and Waiver**

Under each indenture, we and the applicable trustee may supplement the indenture for certain purposes which would not materially adversely affect the interests or rights of the holders of debt securities of a series without the consent of those holders. We and the applicable trustee may also modify the indenture or any supplemental indenture in a manner that affects the interests or rights of the holders of debt securities with the consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each affected series issued under the indenture. However, each indenture requires the consent of each holder of debt securities that would be affected by any modification which would:

- change the fixed maturity of any debt securities of any series, or reduce the principal amount thereof, or reduce the rate or extend the time of payment of interest thereon, or reduce any premium payable upon the redemption thereof;
- reduce the amount of principal of an original issue discount debt security or any other debt security payable upon acceleration of the maturity thereof;
- change the currency in which any debt security or any premium or interest is payable;
- impair the right to enforce any payment on or with respect to any debt security;
- reduce the percentage in principal amount of outstanding debt securities of any series, the consent of whose holders is required for modification or amendment of the indenture or for waiver of compliance with certain provisions of the indenture or for waiver of certain defaults; or
- modify any of the above provisions.

Each indenture permits the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series issued under the indenture which is affected by the modification or amendment to waive our compliance with certain covenants contained in the indenture.

### **Payment and Paying Agent**

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement:

- payment of interest on a debt security on any interest payment date will be made to the person in whose name a debt security is registered at the close of business on the record date for the interest;
- principal, interest and premium on the debt securities of a particular series will be payable at the office of such paying agent or paying agents as we may designate for such purpose from time to time. Notwithstanding the foregoing, at our option, payment of any interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the person entitled thereto as such address appears in the security register;
- a paying agent designated by us will act as paying agent for payments with respect to debt securities of each series. All paying agents initially designated by us for the debt securities of a particular series will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement. We may at any time designate additional paying

---

[Table of Contents](#)

agents or rescind the designation of any paying agent or approve a change in the office through which any paying agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a paying agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of a particular series; and

- all monies paid by us to a paying agent for the payment of the principal, interest or premium on any debt security which remain unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, interest or premium has become due and payable will be repaid to us upon request, and the holder of such debt security thereafter may look only to us for payment thereof.

### **Denominations, Registrations and Transfer**

Unless an accompanying prospectus supplement states otherwise, debt securities will be represented by one or more global certificates registered in the name of a nominee for The Depository Trust Company, or DTC. In such case, each holder's beneficial interest in the global securities will be shown on the records of DTC or one of its participants and transfers of beneficial interests will only be effected through DTC's or such participant's records.

A holder of debt securities may only exchange a beneficial interest in a global security for certificated securities registered in the holder's name if:

- DTC notifies us that it is unwilling or unable to continue serving as the depository for the relevant global securities or DTC ceases to maintain certain qualifications under the Exchange Act and no successor depository has been appointed for 90 days; or
- we determine in our sole discretion, that the global security shall be exchangeable.

If debt securities are issued in certificated form, they will only be issued in the minimum denomination specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement and integral multiples of such denomination. Transfers and exchanges of such debt securities will only be permitted in such minimum denomination. Transfers of debt securities in certificated form may be registered at the trustee's corporate office or at the offices of any paying agent or trustee appointed by us under the applicable indenture. Exchanges of debt securities for an equal aggregate principal amount of debt securities in different denominations may also be made at such locations.

### **Governing Law**

Each indenture and debt securities will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the internal laws of the State of New York.

### **Trustee**

If an event of default occurs under an indenture and is continuing, the trustee under that indenture will be required to use the degree of care and skill of a prudent person in the conduct of that person's own affairs. The trustee will become obligated to exercise any of its powers under that indenture at the request of any of the holders of any debt securities issued under that indenture only after those holders have offered the trustee indemnity satisfactory to it.

Each indenture contains limitations on the right of the trustee, if it becomes a creditor of Carriage or any subsidiary guarantor, if applicable, to obtain payment of claims or to realize on certain property received for any such claim, as security or otherwise. The trustee is permitted to engage in other transactions with Carriage or any subsidiary guarantor, if applicable. If, however, it acquires any conflicting interest, it must eliminate that conflict or resign within 90 days after ascertaining that it has a conflicting interest and after the occurrence of a default under the applicable indenture, unless the default has been cured, waived or otherwise eliminated within the 90-day period.

**Conversion or Exchange Rights**

The prospectus supplement will describe the terms, if any, on which a series of debt securities may be convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock, preferred stock or other debt securities. These terms will include provisions as to whether conversion or exchange is mandatory, at the option of the holder, or at our option. These provisions may allow or require the number of shares of our common stock or other securities to be received by the holders of such series of debt securities to be adjusted.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

### General

We are authorized to issue 80,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$.01, of which 16,703,425 shares were issued and outstanding as of April 6, 2017, and 40,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$.01, of which no shares were issued and outstanding as of April 7, 2017. Our common stock is quoted on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol "CSV." The following description of our capital stock is based on our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, as amended and currently in effect.

### Common Stock

The holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters submitted to a vote of common stockholders. Our common stock does not have cumulative voting rights, which means that the holders of a majority of the voting power of shares of common stock outstanding can elect all the directors, and the holders of the remaining shares will not be able to elect any directors. Each share of common stock is entitled to participate equally in dividends, if, as and when declared by our Board of Directors, and in the distribution of assets in the event of liquidation, subject in all cases to any prior rights of outstanding shares of preferred stock outstanding. Our shares of common stock have no preemptive rights, redemption rights or sinking fund provisions. All outstanding shares of common stock are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

### Preferred Stock

Our preferred stock may be issued in series, and shares of each series will have such rights and preferences as may be fixed by our Board of Directors in the resolution authorizing the issuance of that particular series. In designating any series of preferred stock, our Board of Directors has the authority, without further action by the holders of our common stock, to fix the rights, dividend rate, conversion rights, rights and terms of redemption, and the liquidation preferences of that series of preferred stock.

The prospectus supplement relating to any series of preferred stock we are offering will include specific terms relating to the offering. We will file the form of the preferred stock with the SEC before we issue any of it, and you should read it for provisions that may be important to you. The prospectus supplement will include some or all of the following terms:

- the title of the preferred stock;
- the maximum number of shares of the series;
- the dividend rate or the method of calculating the dividend, the date from which dividends will accrue and whether dividends will be cumulative;
- any liquidation preference;
- any optional redemption provisions;
- any terms for the conversion or exchange of the preferred stock for other securities of us or any other entity;
- any voting rights; and
- any other preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights or any qualifications, limitations or restrictions on the rights of the shares.

The issuance of preferred stock by us could adversely affect the voting power of holders of our common stock and the likelihood that such holders will receive dividend payments and payments upon liquidation and could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of us.



## **Delaware Anti-Takeover Law and Charter and Bylaw Provisions**

The Company is a Delaware corporation and is subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. In general, Section 203 prevents an “interested stockholder” (defined generally as a person owning 15% or more of the Company’s outstanding voting stock) from engaging in a “business combination” (as defined in Section 203) with the Company for three years following the date that person becomes an interested stockholder unless (a) before that person became an interested stockholder, the Company’s Board of Directors approved the transaction in which the interested stockholder became an interested stockholder or approved the business combination; (b) upon completion of the transaction that resulted in the interested stockholder’s becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owns at least 85% of the voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced (excluding stock held by directors who are also officers of the Company and by employee stock plans that do not provide employees with the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer); or (c) following the transaction in which that person became an interested stockholder, the business combination is approved by the Company’s Board of Directors and authorized at a meeting of stockholders by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least two-thirds of the outstanding voting stock not owned by the interested stockholder.

Under Section 203, these restrictions also do not apply to certain business combinations proposed by an interested stockholder following the announcement or notification of one of certain extraordinary transactions involving the Company and a person who was not an interested stockholder during the previous three years or who became an interested stockholder with the approval of a majority of the Company’s directors, if that extraordinary transaction is approved or not opposed by a majority of the directors who were directors before any person became an interested stockholder in the previous three years or who were recommended for election or elected to succeed such directors by a majority of such directors then in office.

The Company’s Board of Directors is divided into three classes. The directors of each class are elected for three-year terms, with the terms of the three classes staggered so that directors from a single class are elected at each annual meeting of stockholders. Stockholders may remove a director only for cause upon the vote of holders of at least 80% of voting power of the outstanding shares of common stock. In general, the Board of Directors, not the stockholders, has the right to appoint persons to fill vacancies on the Board of Directors.

The Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation dated July 2, 1996, as amended, (the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and amendments thereto are herein collectively called the “Charter”) provides that special meetings of holders of common stock may be called only by the Company’s Board of Directors and that only such business proposed by the Board of Directors may be considered at special meetings of holders of common stock.

The Charter provides that the only business (including election of directors) that may be considered at an annual meeting of holders of common stock, in addition to business proposed (or persons nominated to be directors) by the directors of the Company, is business proposed (or persons nominated to be directors) by holders of common stock who comply with the notice and disclosure requirements set forth in the Charter. In general, the Charter requires that a stockholder give the Company notice of proposed business or nominations no later than 60 days before the annual meeting of holders of common stock (meaning the date on which the meeting is first scheduled and not postponements or adjournments thereof) or (if later) ten days after the first public notice of the annual meeting is sent to holders of common stock. In general, the notice must also contain information about the stockholder proposing the business or nomination, the stockholder’s interest in the business, and (with respect to nominations for director) information about the nominee of the nature ordinarily required to be disclosed in public proxy solicitation statements. The stockholder also must submit a notarized letter from each of the stockholder’s nominees stating the nominee’s acceptance of the nomination and indicating the nominee’s intention to serve as director if elected.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

The Delaware General Corporation Law provides generally that the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares entitled to vote on any matter is required to amend a corporation's certificate of incorporation or bylaws, unless the corporation's certificate of incorporation or bylaws requires a greater percentage. The Charter provides that approval by the holders of at least 66.67% of the voting power of the outstanding voting stock of the Company is required to amend the provisions of the Charter previously discussed and certain other provisions.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES

### General

We may, at our option, elect to have shares of preferred stock be represented by depositary shares. The shares of any series of the preferred stock underlying the depositary shares will be deposited under a separate deposit agreement between us and a bank or trust company selected by us as the depositary. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, each owner of a depositary share will be entitled, in proportion to the applicable interest in the number of shares of preferred stock underlying such depositary share, to all the rights and preferences of the preferred stock underlying such depositary share, including dividend, voting, redemption, conversion, exchange and liquidation rights.

The depositary shares will be evidenced by depositary receipts issued pursuant to the deposit agreement, each of which will represent the applicable interest in a number of shares of a particular series of the preferred stock described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Unless otherwise specified in this prospectus supplement, a holder of depositary shares is not entitled to receive the shares of preferred stock underlying the depositary shares.

### Dividends and Other Distributions

The depositary will distribute all cash dividends or other cash distributions received in respect of the preferred stock to the record holders of depositary shares representing such preferred stock in proportion to the numbers of such depositary shares owned by such holders on the relevant record date.

In the event of a distribution other than in cash, the depositary will distribute property received by it to the record holders of depositary shares entitled thereto or the depositary may, with our approval, sell such property and distribute the net proceeds from such sale to such holders.

### Redemption of Depositary Shares

If preferred stock underlying the depositary shares is subject to redemption, the depositary shares will be redeemed from the proceeds received by the depositary resulting from the redemption, in whole or in part, of the preferred stock held by the depositary. The redemption price per depositary share will be equal to the aggregate redemption price payable with respect to the number of shares of preferred stock underlying the depositary shares. Whenever we redeem preferred stock from the depositary, the depositary will redeem as of the same redemption date a proportionate number of depositary shares representing the shares of preferred stock that were redeemed. If less than all the depositary shares are to be redeemed, the depositary shares to be redeemed will be selected by lot, pro rata or by another equitable method as may be determined by us.

After the date fixed for redemption, the depositary shares so called for redemption will no longer be deemed to be outstanding and all rights of the holders of the depositary shares will cease, except the right to receive the redemption price payable upon such redemption. Any funds deposited by us with the depositary for any depositary shares which the holders thereof fail to redeem shall be returned to us after a period of two years from the date such funds are so deposited.

### Voting

Upon receipt of notice of any meeting or action in lieu of any meeting at which the holders of any shares of preferred stock underlying the depositary shares are entitled to vote, the depositary will mail the information contained in such notice to the record holders of the depositary shares relating to such preferred stock. Each record holder of such depositary shares on the record date (which will be the same date as the record date for the

---

[Table of Contents](#)

preferred stock) will be entitled to instruct the depositary as to the exercise of the voting rights pertaining to the number of shares of preferred stock underlying such holder's depositary shares. The depositary will endeavor, insofar as practicable, to vote the number of shares of preferred stock underlying such depositary shares in accordance with such instructions, and we will agree to take all action which may be deemed necessary by the depositary in order to enable the depositary to do so.

**Amendment of the Depositary Agreement**

The form of depositary receipt evidencing the depositary shares and any provision of the deposit agreement may at any time be amended by agreement between us and the depositary, provided, however, that any amendment which materially and adversely alters the rights of the existing holders of depositary shares will not be effective unless such amendment has been approved by at least a majority of the depositary shares then outstanding.

**Charges of Depositary**

We will pay all transfer and other taxes and governmental charges that arise solely from the existence of the depositary arrangements. We will pay charges of the depositary in connection with the initial deposit of the preferred stock and any exchange or redemption of the preferred stock. Holders of depositary shares will pay all other transfer and other taxes and governmental charges, and, in addition, such other charges as are expressly provided in the deposit agreement to be for their accounts.

**Miscellaneous**

We, or at our option, the depositary, will forward to the holders of depositary shares all reports and communications from us which we are required to furnish to the holders of preferred stock.

Neither the depositary nor we will be liable if either of us is prevented or delayed by law or any circumstances beyond our control in performing our obligations under the deposit agreement. Our obligations and those of the depositary under the deposit agreement will be limited to performance in good faith of our duties thereunder and we and the depositary will not be obligated to prosecute or defend any legal proceeding in respect of any depositary share or preferred stock unless satisfactory indemnity has been furnished. We and the depositary may rely upon written advice of counsel or accountants, or information provided by persons presenting preferred stock for deposit, holders of depositary shares or other persons believed to be competent and on documents believed to be genuine.

**Resignation and Removal of Depositary; Termination of the Deposit Agreement**

The depositary may resign at any time by delivering to us notice of its election to do so, and we may at any time remove the depositary, any such resignation or removal to take effect upon the appointment of a successor depositary and its acceptance of such appointment. Such successor depositary will be appointed by us within 60 days after delivery of the notice of resignation or removal. The deposit agreement may be terminated at our direction or by the depositary if a period of 90 days has expired after the depositary has delivered to us written notice of its election to resign and a successor depositary has not been appointed. Upon termination of the deposit agreement, the depositary will discontinue the transfer of depositary receipts, will suspend the distribution of dividends to the holders thereof, and will not give any further notices (other than notice of such termination) or perform any further acts under the deposit agreement except that the depositary will continue to deliver preferred stock certificates, together with such dividends and distributions and the net proceeds of any sales of rights, preferences, privileges or other property in exchange for depositary receipts surrendered. Upon our request, the depositary shall deliver all books, records, certificates evidencing preferred stock, depositary receipts and other documents relating to the subject matter of the depositary agreement to us.

## DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

We may issue warrants to purchase debt securities, preferred stock, common stock, depositary shares, purchase contracts or units that are registered pursuant to the registration statement to which this prospectus relates. We may issue warrants independently or together with other securities that are registered pursuant to the registration statement to which this prospectus relates. Warrants sold with other securities may be attached to or separate from the other securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement between us and a warrant agent that we will name in the prospectus supplement. We will describe additional terms of the warrants and the applicable warrant agreements in the applicable prospectus supplement.

### General

If warrants are offered, the prospectus supplement relating to a series of warrants will include the specific terms of the warrants, including:

- the offering price;
- the title of the warrants;
- the aggregate number of warrants offered;
- the dates or periods during which the warrants can be exercised;
- whether the warrants will be issued in individual certificates to holders or in the form of global securities held by a depositary on behalf of holders;
- the designation and terms of any securities with which the warrants are issued;
- if the warrants are issued as a unit with another security, the date, if any, on and after which the warrants and the other security will be separately transferable;
- if the exercise price is not payable in U.S. dollars, the foreign currency, currency unit or composite currency in which the exercise price is denominated;
- any terms, procedures and limitations relating to the transferability, exchange or exercise of the warrants;
- any special tax implications of the warrants or their exercise;
- any antidilution provisions of the warrants;
- any redemption or call provisions applicable to the warrants; and
- any other terms of the warrants.

### Transfers and Exchanges

A holder will be able to exchange warrant certificates for new warrant certificates of different denominations, or to transfer warrants, at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement. Prior to exercise, holders of warrants will have none of the rights of holders of the underlying securities.

### Exercise

Holders will be able to exercise warrants up to 5:00 P.M. New York City time on the date set forth in the prospectus supplement as the expiration date.

After this time, unless we have extended the expiration date, the unexercised warrants will be void.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

Subject to any restrictions and additional requirements that may be set forth in a prospectus supplement, holders of warrants may exercise them by delivering to the warrant agent at its corporate trust office the following:

- warrant certificates properly completed; and
- payment of the exercise price.

As soon as practicable after the delivery, we will issue and deliver to the indicated holder the securities purchasable upon exercise. If a holder does not exercise all the warrants represented by a particular certificate, we will also issue a new certificate for the remaining number of warrants.

**No Rights of Security Holder Prior to Exercise**

Prior to the exercise of their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon the exercise of the warrants, and will not be entitled to:

- in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, payments of principal of, premium, if any, or interest, if any, on the debt securities purchasable upon exercise; or
- in the case of warrants to purchase equity securities, the right to vote or to receive dividend payments or similar distributions on the securities purchasable upon exercise

**Enforceability of Rights by Holders of Warrants**

Each warrant agent will act solely as our agent under the relevant warrant agreement and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for any warrant holder. A single bank or trust company may act as warrant agent for more than one issue of warrants. A warrant agent will have no duty or responsibility if we default in performing our obligations under the relevant warrant agreement or warrant, including any duty or responsibility to initiate any legal proceedings or to make any demand upon us.

**Title**

We and the warrant agents and any of our respective agents may treat the registered holder of any warrant certificate as the absolute owner of the warrants evidenced by that certificate for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights attaching to the warrants so requested, despite any notice to the contrary.

## DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS

We may issue subscription rights to purchase common stock, preferred stock, depositary shares, other securities described in this prospectus or any combination thereof. These subscription rights may be issued independently or together with any other security offered by us and may or may not be transferable by the securityholder receiving the subscription rights in such offering. In connection with any offering of subscription rights, we may enter into a standby arrangement with one or more underwriters or other investors pursuant to which the underwriters or other investors may be required to purchase any securities remaining unsubscribed for after such offering.

To the extent appropriate, the applicable prospectus supplement will describe the specific terms of the subscription rights to purchase shares of our securities offered thereby, including the following:

- the date of determining the securityholders entitled to the subscription rights distribution;
- the price, if any, for the subscription rights;
- the exercise price payable for the common stock, preferred stock, depositary shares or other securities upon the exercise of the subscription right;
- the number of subscription rights issued to each securityholder;
- the amount of common stock, preferred stock, depositary shares or other securities that may be purchased per each subscription right;
- any provisions for adjustment of the amount of securities receivable upon exercise of the subscription rights or of the exercise price of the subscription rights;
- the extent to which the subscription rights are transferable;
- the date on which the right to exercise the subscription rights shall commence, and the date on which the subscription rights shall expire;
- the extent to which the subscription rights may include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- the material terms of any standby underwriting or purchase arrangement entered into by us in connection with the offering of subscription rights;
- any applicable federal income tax considerations; and
- any other terms of the subscription rights, including the terms, procedures and limitations relating to the transferability, exchange and exercise of the subscription rights.

## DESCRIPTION OF PURCHASE CONTRACTS

We may issue purchase contracts obligating holders to purchase from us, and us to sell to the holders, a specified number, or amount, of securities at a future date or dates. The purchase contracts may be issued separately or as part of units consisting of a purchase contract and an underlying debt or preferred security covered by this prospectus, U.S. Treasury security or other U.S. government or agency obligation. The holder of the unit may be required to pledge the debt, preferred security, U.S. Treasury security or other U.S. government or agency obligation to secure its obligations under the purchase contract.

If purchase contracts are offered, the prospectus supplement will specify the material terms of the purchase contracts, the units and any applicable pledge or depository arrangements, including one or more of the following:

- the stated amount that a holder will be obligated to pay under the purchase contract in order to purchase the underlying security;
- the settlement date or dates on which the holder will be obligated to purchase the underlying security and whether the occurrence of any events may cause the settlement date to occur on an earlier date and the terms on which any early settlement would occur;
- the events, if any, that will cause our obligations and the obligations of the holder under the purchase contract to terminate;
- the settlement rate, which is a number that, when multiplied by the stated amount of a purchase contract, determines the number, or amount, of securities that we will be obligated to sell and a holder will be obligated to purchase under that purchase contract upon payment of the stated amount of that purchase contract;
- whether the purchase contracts will be issued separately or as part of units consisting of a purchase contract and an underlying debt or preferred security with an aggregate principal amount or liquidation amount equal to the stated amount;
- the type of security, if any, that is pledged by the holder to secure its obligations under a purchase contract;
- the terms of the pledge arrangement relating to the security, including the terms on which distributions or payments of interest and principal on the security will be retained by a collateral agent, delivered to us or be distributed to the holder; and
- the amount of the contract fee, if any, that may be payable by us to the holder or by the holder to us, the date or dates on which the contract fee will be payable and the extent to which we or the holder, as applicable, may defer payment of the contract fee on those payment dates.



## DESCRIPTION OF UNITS

As specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may issue units consisting of one or more shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, warrants, debt securities, subscription rights, purchase contracts or any combination of such securities, including subsidiary guarantees of debt securities. The applicable prospectus supplement will describe:

- the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances the securities comprising the units may be separately traded;
- the terms and conditions applicable to the units, including a description of the terms of any applicable unit agreement governing the units; and
- a description of the provisions for the payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units.

## FORMS OF SECURITIES

We may issue the debt securities, warrants, purchase contracts and units of any series in the form of one or more fully registered global securities that will be deposited with a depository or with a nominee for a depository and registered in the name of the depository or its nominee. In that case, one or more global securities will be issued in a denomination or aggregate denominations equal to the portion of the aggregate principal or face amount of outstanding registered securities of the series to be represented by such global securities. Unless and until the depository exchanges a global security in whole for securities in definitive registered form, the global security may not be transferred except as a whole by the depository to a nominee of the depository or by a nominee of the depository to the depository or another nominee of the depository or by the depository or any of its nominees to a successor of the depository or a nominee of such successor.

The specific terms of the depository arrangement with respect to any portion of a series of securities to be represented by a global security will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such series. We anticipate that the following provisions will apply to all depository arrangements.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be limited to persons that have accounts with the depository for such global security known as “participants” or persons that may hold interests through such participants.

Upon the issuance of a global security, the depository for such global security will credit, on its book-entry registration and transfer system, the participants’ accounts with the respective principal or face amounts of the securities represented by the global security beneficially owned by the participants. The accounts to be credited shall be designated by any dealers, underwriters or agents participating in the distribution of such securities.

Ownership of beneficial interests in such global security will be shown on, and the transfer of such ownership interests will be effected only through, records maintained by the depository for such global security (with respect to interests of participants) and on the records of participants (with respect to interests of persons holding through participants). The laws of some states may require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form. Such limits and such laws may impair the ability to own, transfer or pledge beneficial interests in global securities.

So long as the depository for a global security, or its nominee, is the registered owner of such global security, such depository or such nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner or holder of the securities represented by such global security for all purposes under the applicable indenture, warrant agreement, purchase contract or unit agreement. Except as set forth below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have the securities represented by such global security registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of such securities in definitive form and will not be considered the owners or holders thereof under the applicable indenture, warrant agreement, purchase contract or unit agreement. Accordingly, each person owning a beneficial interest in a global security must rely on the procedures of the depository for the global security and, if such person is not a participant, on the procedures of the participant through which such person owns its interest, to exercise any rights of a holder under the applicable indenture, warrant agreement, purchase contract or unit agreement. We understand that under existing industry practices, if we request any action of holders or if an owner of a beneficial interest in a global security desires to give or take any action which a holder is entitled to give or take under the applicable indenture, warrant agreement, purchase contract or unit agreement, the depository for such global security would authorize the participants holding the relevant beneficial interests to give or take such action, and such participants would authorize beneficial owners owning through such participants to give or take such action or would otherwise act upon the instructions of beneficial owners holding through them.

Principal, premium, if any, and interest payments on debt securities, and any payments to holders with respect to warrants, purchase contracts or units represented by a global security registered in the name of a

---

[Table of Contents](#)

depository or its nominee will be made to such depository or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner of such global security. None of us, the trustees, the warrant agents, the unit agents or any of our other agents, agent of the trustees or agent of the warrant agents or unit agents will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in such global security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

We expect that the depository for any securities represented by a global security, or its nominee, upon receipt of any payment of principal, premium, interest or other distribution of underlying securities or commodities to holders in respect of such global security, will immediately credit participants' accounts in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in such global security as shown on the records of such depository or its nominee. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in such global security held through such participants will be governed by standing customer instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with the securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such participants.

If the depository for any securities represented by a global security is at any time unwilling or unable to continue as depository or ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and we do not appoint a successor depository registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act within 90 days, we will issue such securities in definitive form in exchange for such global security. In addition, we may at any time and in our sole discretion determine not to have any of the securities of a series represented by one or more global securities and, in such event, will issue securities of such series in definitive form in exchange for all of the global security or securities representing such securities. Any securities issued in definitive form in exchange for a global security will be registered in such name or names as the depository shall instruct the relevant trustee, warrant agent or other relevant agent of ours. We expect that such instructions will be based upon directions received by the depository from participants with respect to ownership of beneficial interests in such global security.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may sell our securities from time to time through underwriters, dealers or agents or directly to purchasers, in one or more transactions at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed, or at market prices prevailing at the time of sale, at prices related to such prevailing market prices or at negotiated prices. We may also sell our securities upon the exercise of subscription rights that may be distributed to security holders. We may use these methods in any combination.

We will describe the terms of the offering of the securities in a prospectus supplement, information incorporated by reference or any related free writing prospectus, including:

- the name or names of any underwriters, if any;
- the purchase price of the securities and the proceeds we will receive from the sale;
- any underwriting discounts and other items constituting underwriters' compensation;
- any initial public offering price;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchange or market on which the securities may be listed.

Only underwriters we name in the prospectus supplement, information incorporated by reference or any related free writing prospectus are underwriters of the securities offered thereby.

The distribution of securities may be effected, from time to time, in one or more transactions, including:

- block transactions (which may involve crosses) and transactions on the New York Stock Exchange or any other organized market where the securities may be traded;
- purchases by a broker-dealer as principal and resale by the broker-dealer for its own account pursuant to a prospectus supplement;
- ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which a broker-dealer solicits purchasers;
- sales "at the market" to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market, on an exchange or otherwise; and
- sales in other ways not involving market makers or established trading markets, including direct sales to purchasers.

### By Underwriters

We may use an underwriter or underwriters in the offer or sale of our securities.

- If we use an underwriter or underwriters, the offered securities will be acquired by the underwriters for their own account.
- We will include the names of the specific managing underwriter or underwriters, as well as any other underwriters, and the terms of the transactions, including the compensation the underwriters and dealers will receive, in the prospectus supplement.
- The underwriters will use this prospectus and the prospectus supplement to sell our securities.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

We may also sell securities pursuant to one or more standby agreements with one or more underwriters in connection with the call, redemption or exchange of a specified class or series of any of our outstanding securities. In a standby agreement, the underwriter or underwriters would agree either:

- to purchase from us up to the number of shares of common stock that would be issuable upon conversion or exchange of all the shares of the class or series of our securities at an agreed price per share of common stock; or
- to purchase from us up to a specified dollar amount of offered securities at an agreed price per offered security, which price may be fixed or may be established by formula or other method and which may or may not relate to market prices of our common stock or any other outstanding security.

The underwriter or underwriters would also agree, if applicable, to convert or exchange any securities of the class or series held or purchased by the underwriter or underwriters into or for our common stock or other security.

The underwriter or underwriters may assist in the solicitation of conversions or exchanges by holders of the class or series of securities.

### **By Dealers**

We may use a dealer to sell our securities.

- If we use a dealer, we, as principal, will sell our securities to the dealer.
- The dealer will then resell our securities to the public at varying prices that the dealer will determine at the time it sells our securities.
- We will include the name of the dealer and the terms of our transactions with the dealer in the prospectus supplement.

If we offer securities in a subscription rights offering to our existing security holders, we may enter into a standby underwriting agreement with dealers, acting as standby underwriters. We may pay the standby underwriters a commitment fee for the securities they commit to purchase on a standby basis. If we do not enter into a standby underwriting arrangement, we may retain a dealer-manager to manage a subscription rights offering for us.

### **By Agents**

We may designate agents to solicit offers to purchase our securities.

- We will name any agent involved in offering or selling our securities and any commissions that we will pay to the agent in the prospectus supplement.
- Unless we indicate otherwise in the prospectus supplement, our agents will act on a best efforts basis for the period of their appointment.
- Our agents may be deemed to be underwriters under the Securities Act of any of our securities that they offer or sell.

### **By Delayed Delivery Contracts**

We may authorize our agents and underwriters to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase our securities at the public offering price under delayed delivery contracts.

- If we use delayed delivery contracts, we will disclose that we are using them in the prospectus supplement and will tell you when we will demand payment and delivery of the securities under the delayed delivery contracts.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

- These delayed delivery contracts will be subject only to the conditions that we set forth in the prospectus supplement.
- We will indicate in the prospectus supplement the commission that underwriters and agents soliciting purchases of our securities under delayed delivery contracts will be entitled to receive.

### **Direct Sales**

We may directly solicit offers to purchase our securities, and we may directly sell our securities to institutional or other investors, including our affiliates. We will describe the terms of our direct sales in the prospectus supplement. We may also sell our securities upon the exercise of rights which we may issue.

### **General Information**

Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in the distribution of our securities may be underwriters as defined in the Securities Act, and any discounts or commissions they receive and any profit they make on the resale of the offered securities may be treated as underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. Any underwriters or agents will be identified and their compensation described in a prospectus supplement. We may indemnify agents, underwriters and dealers against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or make contributions to payments they may be required to make relating to those liabilities. Our agents, underwriters and dealers, or their affiliates, may be customers of, engage in transactions with or perform services for us in the ordinary course of business.

Each series of securities offered by this prospectus (other than common stock) may be a new issue of securities with no established trading market. Any underwriters to whom securities offered by this prospectus are sold by us for public offering and sale may make a market in the securities offered by this prospectus, but the underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading market for any securities offered by this prospectus.

Representatives of the underwriters through whom our securities are sold for public offering and sale may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing transactions, syndicate short covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M under the Exchange Act. Over-allotment involves syndicate sales in excess of the offering size, which creates a syndicate short position. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the offered securities so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum.

Syndicate covering transactions involve purchases of the offered securities in the open market after the distribution has been completed in order to cover syndicate short positions. Penalty bids permit the representative of the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a syndicate member when the offered securities originally sold by such syndicate member are purchased in a syndicate covering transaction to cover syndicate short positions. Such stabilizing transactions, syndicate covering transactions and penalty bids may cause the price of the offered securities to be higher than it would otherwise be in the absence of such transactions. These transactions may be effected on a national securities exchange and, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time. Underwriters, dealers and agents may be customers of, engage in transactions with or perform services for, us and our subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business.

### **Fees and Commissions**

In compliance with the guidelines of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, or FINRA, the aggregate maximum discount, commission or agency fees or other items constituting underwriting compensation to be received by any FINRA member or independent broker-dealer will not exceed 8% of any offering pursuant to this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement or other offering materials; however, it is anticipated that the maximum commission or discount to be received in any particular offering of securities will be less than this amount.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

If 5% or more of the net proceeds of any offering of securities made under this prospectus will be received by a FINRA member participating in the offering or affiliates or associated persons of such FINRA member, the offering will be conducted in accordance with FINRA Rule 5121.

**LEGAL MATTERS**

Certain legal matters in connection with the securities offered hereby will be passed on for us by Porter Hedges LLP, Houston, Texas, and as to certain of the guarantors, by Neil Verma, Esq., Legal Counsel of Carriage Services, Inc. Any underwriters will be advised about other issues relating to any offering by their own legal counsel.

**EXPERTS**

The financial statements, schedules, and management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting of Carriage Services, Inc. incorporated by reference in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement have been so incorporated by reference in reliance upon the reports of Grant Thornton LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, upon the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

**Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following table sets forth the various expenses, all of which will be borne by us, in connection with the sale and distribution of the securities being registered, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions. All amounts shown are estimates except for the Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee.

Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	\$ 40,565
Accounting fees and expenses	\$ *
Legal fees and expenses	\$ *
Printing and engraving expenses	\$ *
Miscellaneous	\$ *
Total	\$ *

(\*) Estimated expenses are not presently known. The foregoing sets forth the general categories of expenses (other than underwriting discounts and commissions) that we anticipate to incur in connection with the offering of securities under this registration statement. An estimate of the aggregate expenses in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being offered will be included in the applicable prospectus supplement.

**Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

The following summaries are qualified in their entirety by reference to the complete text of any statutes referred to below and the organizational documents of Carriage.

**INDEMNIFICATION OF DIRECTORS AND OFFICERS OF CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the “DGCL”) provides that a corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or other agent of the corporation (an “officer or director”), if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the person’s conduct was unlawful. Indemnification may be made against expenses, including attorneys’ fees, judgments, fines and settlements paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with the proceeding; except, in an action by or in the right of the corporation, indemnification is limited to expenses, including attorneys’ fees, actually and reasonably incurred in the defense or settlement of the action. Additionally, no indemnification may be made without court order with respect to any claim, issue, or matter as to which the person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation in the performance of that person’s duty to the corporation and its shareholders, or with respect to any settlement or expenses incurred in defending a pending action which settled without court approval. The termination of any action, suit or proceeding by judgment, order, settlement or conviction or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent does not, of itself, create a presumption that the person did not meet the standard of conduct required by the DGCL.

Section 145(c) provides that, to the extent that a present or former officer or director of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action, suit or proceeding, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, such person shall be indemnified against expenses, including attorneys’ fees,



---

[Table of Contents](#)

actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection therewith. Section 145(b) adds that a court may also order indemnification if it determines that the person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnification in view of all the relevant circumstances.

Under Section 145(d) of the DGCL, unless ordered by a court, a corporation may not indemnify an officer or director if the person's conduct did not satisfy the standards set forth above. The determination as to whether indemnification is permissible must be made as follows: (1) by a majority vote of the directors who are not parties to such action, suit or proceeding, even though less than a quorum; (2) by a committee of such directors designated by majority vote of such directors, even though less than a quorum; (3) if there are no such directors, or if such directors so direct, by independent legal counsel in a written opinion; or (4) by the stockholders.

Section 145(g) provides that a corporation may purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of a person who is or was an officer or director of the corporation against any liability asserted against such person and incurred by such person in any such capacity, or arising out of such person's status as such, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such liability under the DGCL. Section 145(f) adds that the indemnification provided by, or granted pursuant to, the DGCL is not exclusive of any other rights to which those seeking indemnification may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise, both as to action in such person's official capacity and as to action in another capacity while holding such office.

Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL provides that a certificate of incorporation may contain a provision eliminating or limiting the personal liability of a director to the corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, provided that such provision shall not eliminate or limit the liability of a director (i) for any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to the corporation or its stockholders, (ii) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law, (iii) under Section 174 of the DGCL, or (iv) for any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

Article X of our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the "Charter") provides that we will indemnify and hold harmless any person who was, is, or is threatened to be made a party to a proceeding by reason of the fact that he or she: (1) is or was a director or officer of the Company; or (2) while a director or officer of the Company, is or was serving at the request of the Company as a director, officer, partner, venturer, proprietor, trustee, employee, agent, or similar functionary of another foreign or domestic corporation, partnership, joint venture, sole proprietorship, trust, employee benefit plan, or other enterprise, to the fullest extent permitted under the DGCL. Article X further provides that we may also indemnify any employee or agent to the fullest extent permitted under the DGCL. The right to indemnification under Article X of the Charter is a contract right which includes, with respect to directors and officers, the right to be paid by the Company the expenses incurred in defending any such proceeding in advance of its disposition to the maximum extent permitted under the DGCL.

Article 8.0 of our Amended and Restated By-Laws, as amended (the "By-Laws"), also provides that we will indemnify our directors and officers, and are authorized to indemnify employees and agents, to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL, except: (1) for any breach of their duty of loyalty to the Company or the Company's stockholders; (2) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of the law; or (3) for any transaction from which such director or officer derived an improper benefit. The By-Laws also permit our Board of Directors to authorize the advancement of expenses to any director or officer of the Company, subject to a written undertaking to repay such advance if it is later determined that the indemnitee does not satisfy the standard of conduct required for indemnification. Additionally, pursuant to the By-Laws, the Chairman of our Board of Directors is authorized to enter into indemnification contracts with each director and officer of the Company.

## INDEMNIFICATION OF DIRECTORS AND OFFICERS OF ADDITIONAL REGISTRANTS

The following summarizes the indemnification of the directors and officers of subsidiaries of Carriage Services, Inc. that are additional registrants under this registration statement.

### Delaware Additional Registrants

*Carriage Funeral Holdings, Inc., CFS Funeral Services, Inc., Carriage Holding Company, Inc., Carriage Internet Strategies, Inc., Carriage Management, Inc., Carriage Life Events, Inc., Carriage Pennsylvania Holdings, Inc., Carriage Funeral Management, Inc., Carriage Florida Holdings, Inc., Carriage Services Investment Advisors, Inc., Carriage Merger VI, Inc., CRSE Holdings, Inc., PNCA, Inc., Carriage Operations, Inc., Carriage Services of Tennessee, Inc., each a Delaware corporation (each a “Delaware Corporate Subsidiary”).*

The indemnification provisions of the DGCL described in “*Indemnification of Directors and Officers of Carriage Services, Inc.*” above also relate to the directors and officers of each Delaware Corporate Subsidiary.

The bylaws of each Delaware Corporate Subsidiary contain indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL, as amended. In addition, the bylaws of each Delaware Corporate Subsidiary specifically authorize each corporation to purchase and maintain insurance to protect itself and its directors and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under its bylaws. The bylaws of each Delaware Corporate Subsidiary also permit the corporation to authorize the advancement or reimbursement of expenses to any of its director or officer, subject to a written undertaking by such person to repay such amounts if it is later determined that the indemnitee is not entitled to indemnification.

The certificate of incorporation of each Delaware Corporate Subsidiary contains provisions eliminating a director’s personal liability for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except in circumstances involving: (i) a breach of a director’s duty of loyalty to the corporation or its stockholders, (ii) acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or knowing violations of law, (iii) the unlawful payment of dividends or stock purchase or redemption, or (iv) transactions from which a director derived an improper personal benefit.

*Carriage Team California (Cemetery), LLC, Carriage Team California (Funeral), LLC, Carriage Team Florida (Cemetery), LLC, Carriage Team Florida (Funeral), LLC, Carriage Services of Ohio, LLC, Carriage Team Kansas, LLC, each a Delaware limited liability company (each, a “Delaware LLC Subsidiary”).*

Section 18-108 of the Delaware Limited Liability Company Act (“DLLCA”), provides that, subject to such standards and restrictions, if any, as are set forth in its limited liability company agreement, a limited liability company may, and shall have the power to, indemnify and hold harmless any member, manager or other person from and against any and all claims and demands whatsoever.

The limited liability company agreement of each Delaware LLC Subsidiary contains indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its managers, and authorize the indemnification of its officers, to the fullest extent permitted by the DLLCA, as amended. Each limited liability company agreement expressly acknowledges that such indemnification could involve indemnification for negligence or under theories of strict liability. In addition, the limited liability company agreement of each Delaware LLC Subsidiary specifically authorizes the company to purchase and maintain insurance to protect itself and its managers and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the company would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under its limited liability company agreement. The limited liability company agreement of each Delaware LLC Subsidiary also permits the company to authorize the advancement or reimbursement of expenses to any of its managers, subject to a written undertaking by such person to repay such amounts if it is later determined that the indemnitee is not entitled to indemnification.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

The certificate of formation of each Delaware LLC Subsidiary provides that, to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law, a manager of the company shall not be liable to the company or its members for monetary damages for an act or omission in such manager's capacity as a manager.

**California Additional Registrants**

*Wilson & Kratzer Mortuaries ("WKM"), Rolling Hills Memorial Park ("RHMP"), Carriage Funeral Services of California, Inc., Carriage Cemetery Services of California, Inc., Cochrane's Chapel of the Roses, Inc., Horizon Cremation Society, Inc., each a California corporation (each a "California Subsidiary") .*

Section 317 of the California Corporations Code ("CCC") provides that a corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any proceeding (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor) by reason of the fact that the person is or was an agent of the corporation, against expenses, judgments, fines, settlements, and other amounts actually and reasonably incurred in connection with the proceeding, if that person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in the best interests of the corporation, and in the case of a criminal proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the conduct of the person was unlawful. The decision to indemnify a person could be made by a majority of the directors who are not involved in the proceeding, or if such quorum is not obtainable, by approval from independent counsel in a written legal opinion, or by the court in which the proceeding is or was pending. Section 317 of the CCC also provides for certain number of votes in case of stockholder approval of indemnification and excludes the vote of the potentially indemnified person.

Section 317 of the CCC is not exclusive of other indemnification that may be granted by a corporation's articles of incorporation, bylaws, disinterested director vote, stockholders vote, agreement or otherwise, subject in each case to the applicable limits set forth in Section 204 of the CCC.

Neither the bylaws nor the articles of incorporation of any California Subsidiary, other than WKM, contain provisions regarding the indemnification of directors and officers. The bylaws of WKM contain indemnification provisions providing for the indemnification of its officers and directors to the fullest extent permitted by the CCC.

The articles of incorporation of each California Subsidiary, other than RHMP, provide that the liability of its directors for monetary damages shall be eliminated to the fullest extent permitted by California law.

**Connecticut Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Services of Connecticut, Inc., a Connecticut corporation (the "Connecticut Subsidiary") .*

Section 33-756 of the Connecticut Business Corporation Act (the "CBCA") provides that a director is not liable for action taken as a director, or any failure to take any action, if (1) he acted in good faith, (2) he acted with the care an ordinarily prudent person in a like position would exercise under similar circumstances, and (3) in a manner he reasonably believes to be in the best interests of the corporation.

Section 33-779 of the CBCA provides that a corporation may provide indemnification of or advance expenses to a director, officer, employee or agent only as permitted by Section 33-770 to 33-778, inclusive of the CBCA.

Section 33-771 of the CBCA further provides that a corporation incorporated prior to January 1, 1997 shall, except to the extent that the certificate of incorporation expressly provides otherwise, indemnify any director, officer, employee or agent who is made a party to any proceeding, other than an action by or in the right of the corporation or any proceeding with respect to which he was adjudged liable on the basis that he received financial benefit to which he was not entitled, whether or not involving action in his official capacity, against

---

[Table of Contents](#)

liability incurred in the proceeding if (1) (A) he conducted himself in good faith, and (B) he reasonably believed (i) in the case of conduct in his official capacity with the corporation, that his conduct was in the best interests of the corporation, and (ii) in all other cases, that his conduct was at least not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and (C) in the case of any criminal proceeding, he had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful or (2) he engaged in conduct for which broader indemnification has been made permissible or obligatory under a provision of the certificate of incorporation as authorized by subdivision (5) of subsection (b) of Section 33-636 of the CBCA. Termination of a proceeding by judgment, order, settlement or conviction or a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent is not, of itself, determinative that the director or officer did not meet the standard of conduct required by the CBCA.

Section 33-772 of the CBCA provides that a corporation shall indemnify a director or an officer who was wholly successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the defense of any proceeding to which he was a party because he was a director of the corporation against reasonable expenses incurred by him in connection with the proceeding.

Section 33-773 permits a corporation to pay expenses incurred by the indemnified party in defending an action, suit or proceeding in advance of final disposition if approved by the board of directors or shareholders and accompanied by (1) a signed written affirmation that the director in good faith believes he complied with the standard of conduct in 33-771(a) and (2) an undertaking by the indemnified party to repay such amounts if it later determined that he is not entitled to indemnification

Unless ordered by a court under Section 33-774 of the CBCA, a corporation may not indemnify a director under Section 33-771 of the CBC (1) in connection with a proceeding by or in the right of the corporation except for reasonable expenses incurred in connection with the proceeding if it is determined that the director has met the relevant standard of conduct under subsection (a) of Section 33-771 of the CBCA or (2) in connection with any proceeding with respect to conduct for which the director was adjudged liable on the basis that he received a financial benefit to which he was not entitled, whether or not involving action in his official capacity.

Section 33-777 of the CBCA provides that a corporation may purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of directors, officers, employees or agents of the corporation, or who, while a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation serves at the corporation's request as a director, officer, partner, trustee, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other entity, against liability asserted against or incurred by him in that capacity, or arising from his status as a director, officer, employee or agent, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify or advance expenses to him against the same liabilities under the CBCA.

Section 33-778 permits a corporation by a provision in its certificate of incorporation or bylaws or in a resolution adopted by its shareholder or directors to obligate itself to provide indemnification in accordance with these provisions or advance funds to pay or reimburse expenses.

Neither the bylaws or certificate of incorporation of the Connecticut Subsidiary contain provisions regarding the indemnification of directors and officers or limitations on the liability of directors.

### **Idaho Additional Registrants**

*Carriage Cemetery Services of Idaho, Inc. ("CCS Idaho") and Cloverdale Park, Inc. ("Cloverdale Park"), Idaho corporations (the "Idaho Subsidiaries") .*

Section 851 of the Idaho Business Corporation Act (the "IBCA") provides that a corporation may indemnify any individual who is a party to a proceeding because he is a director, as long as such individual conducted himself in good faith and reasonably believed that his conduct in his official capacity was in the best interest of the corporation, or in all other cases, his conduct was not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, or (in the case of criminal proceedings) he had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. Unless

---

[Table of Contents](#)

ordered by a court, an Idaho corporation may not indemnify a director in connection with a proceeding by or in the right of the corporation, except for reasonable expenses incurred, if it is determined that the director has met the relevant standard of conduct as outlined in the preceding sentence, or in connection with a proceeding with respect to which he was adjudged liable on the basis that he received a financial benefit to which he was not entitled, whether or not involving action in his official capacity. Section 856 of the IBCA provides that an Idaho corporation may indemnify an officer to the same extent as a director, and if the person seeking indemnification is an officer and not a director, he or she may be indemnified to such further extent as may be provided by the articles of incorporation, the bylaws, a resolution of the board of directors, or contract, except for (a) liability in connection with proceeding by or in the right of the corporation other than for reasonable expenses incurred in the proceeding, (b) liability arising out of conduct that constitutes receipt of financial benefit to which he is not entitled, intentional infliction of harm to the corporation or the shareholders, or intentional violation of criminal law.

The bylaws of CCS Idaho expressly adopt Title 30 of the Idaho Code. Neither the articles of incorporation nor the bylaws of Cloverdale Park contain indemnification provisions.

**Kentucky Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Funeral Services of Kentucky, Inc., a Kentucky corporation (the “Kentucky Subsidiary”)* .

Sections 271B.8-500 through 271B.8-580 of the Kentucky Business Corporation Act (the “KBCA”) govern indemnification of corporate directors and officers. Under the KBCA, a person may be indemnified by a corporation against judgments, fines, amounts paid in settlement and reasonable expenses (included attorneys’ fees) in connection with any threatened or pending suit or proceeding, whether civil or criminal, by reason of the fact that he is or was a director or officer of the corporation or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director or officer, employee or agent of another entity, if such director or officer acted in good faith and he reasonably believed (a) in the case of conduct in his official capacity with the corporation, the his conduct was in the corporation’s best interest, and (b) in all other cases, that his conduct was at least not opposed to the corporation’s best interest, and, (c) in case of criminal proceeding, he had no reasonable cause to believe that his conduct was unlawful. A Kentucky corporation may not indemnify a director in a suit by or in the right of the corporation in which the director was adjudged liable to the corporation, or in connection with any other proceeding charging improper personal benefit to him, whether or not involving action in his official capacity, in which he was adjudged liable on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received by him. The KBCA provides that indemnification pursuant to its provisions is not exclusive of other rights of indemnification to which a person may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, vote of shareholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise.

The articles of incorporation of the Kentucky Subsidiary provides that, to the fullest extent permitted by Kentucky law, a director of the company shall not be liable to the company or its shareholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director of the company. The bylaws of each Kentucky Subsidiary do not contain indemnification provisions.

**Louisiana Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc., a Louisiana corporation (the “Louisiana subsidiary”)* .

Under Section 83 of the Louisiana Business Corporation Law (the “LBCL”), a Louisiana corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (including an action by or in the right of the corporation), by reason of the fact that he is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another business, foreign or nonprofit corporation, partnership, joint venture or other enterprise. Indemnified expenses include attorney fees,

---

[Table of Contents](#)

judgments, fines, amounts paid in settlement and other expenses actually and reasonably incurred by the indemnified party in connection with the action, suit or proceeding if he acted in good faith and in a manner he reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. In the case of actions by or in the right of the corporation, no indemnity is permitted under Section 83 of the LBCL if the relevant person is determined, in a final non-appealable judgment, to be liable for willful or intentional misconduct in the performance of his duty to the corporation, unless a court determines otherwise.

If a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action referred to in the previous paragraph or any claim therein, the corporation must indemnify him against expenses actually and reasonably incurred in connection with such matter. Section 83 of the LBCL permits a corporation to pay expenses incurred by the indemnified party in defending an action, suit or proceeding in advance of the final disposition if approved by the board of directors and accompanied by an undertaking by the indemnified party to repay such amounts if it is later determined that he is not entitled to indemnification. Section 83 of the LBCL also authorizes Louisiana corporations to buy liability insurance on behalf of any current or former director, officer, agent or employee. The indemnification and expense advancement provisions contained in Section 83 of the LBCL are not exclusive of any other rights to which those indemnified may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, shareholder or director authorization or otherwise.

The articles of incorporation of the Louisiana Subsidiary do not contain indemnification provisions. The bylaws of the Louisiana Subsidiary contain indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the LBCL.

### **Maryland Additional Registrant**

*Hubbard Funeral Home, Inc., a Maryland corporation (the "Maryland Subsidiary") .*

Section 2-418 of the Maryland General Corporation Law ("MGCL") permits indemnification of any officer or director made a party to any proceeding by reason of service as an officer or director unless it is established that: (i) the act or omission of such person was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and was committed in bad faith or was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty; (ii) such person actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services; or (iii) in the case of any criminal proceedings, such person had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful.

The indemnity may be against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually incurred by the director or officer in connection with the proceeding; but, if the proceeding is one by, or in the right of, the corporation, indemnification is not permitted with respect to any proceeding in which the director or officer has been adjudged to be liable to the corporation. If the proceeding is one charging improper personal benefit to the director or officer, whether or not involving action in the director's or officer's official capacity, indemnification of the director or officer is not permitted if the director or officer was adjudged to be liable on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received. Under Section 2-418 of the MGCL, the corporation is required to indemnify a director for reasonable expenses incurred if such individual has been successful, on the merits or otherwise, in defense of any proceeding arising out of such individual's official capacity. Indemnification under the provisions of Maryland law is not deemed exclusive of any other rights, by indemnification or otherwise, to which a director may be entitled under the charter, bylaws, any resolution of stockholders or directors, any agreement or otherwise.

The bylaws of the Maryland Subsidiary contain provisions providing for the indemnification of officers and directors if the officer or director acted in good faith and in a manner reasonably believed to be in the best interest of the corporation and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. In addition, the bylaws specifically authorize the corporation to purchase and maintain insurance to protect itself and its directors and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or

not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under the MGCL.

### **Massachusetts Additional Registrants**

*CSI Funeral Services of Massachusetts, Inc., Forastiere Family Funeral Service, Inc., Carriage Insurance Agency of Massachusetts, Inc., Cataudella Funeral Home, Inc. (“Cataudella”), each a Massachusetts corporation (each a “Massachusetts Subsidiary”).*

Section 8.51 of the Massachusetts Business Corporation Act (“MBCA”) provides that a corporation may indemnify its directors against expenses (including attorneys’ fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement reasonably incurred in connection with any litigation or other legal proceeding brought against any director by virtue of his position as a director of the corporation unless he is deemed to have not acted in good faith in the reasonable belief that his action was in the best interest of the corporation.

Section 8.52 of the MBCA provides that a corporation must indemnify a director who is wholly successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the defense of any proceeding to which the director was a party because he was a director of the corporation against reasonable expenses incurred by him in connection with the proceeding.

Section 8.56 of the MBCA provides that a corporation may indemnify its officers to the same extent as its directors and, for officers that are not directors, to the extent provided by (i) the articles of organization, (ii) the bylaws, (iii) a vote of the board of directors or (iv) a contract. In all instances, the extent to which a corporation provides indemnification to its officers under Section 8.56 of the MBCA is optional.

Section 8.57 of the MBCA authorizes a corporation to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of an individual who is a director or officer of the corporation, or who, while a director or officer of the corporation, serves at the corporation’s request as a director, officer, partner, trustee, employee, or agent of another domestic or foreign corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan, or other entity, against liability asserted against or incurred by him in that capacity or arising from his status as a director or officer, whether or not the corporation would have power to indemnify or advance expenses to him against such liability.

The articles of organization of each Massachusetts Subsidiary, except Cataudella, contain indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the MBCA. The bylaws of Cataudella contain indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the MBCA if: (1)(i) he or she conducted himself or herself in good faith; and (ii) he or she reasonably believed that his or her conduct was in the best interests of the corporation or that his or her conduct was at least not opposed to the best interests of the corporation; and (iii) in the case of any criminal proceeding, he or she had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful; or (2) he or she engaged in conduct for which he or she shall not be liable under a provision of the articles of organization authorized by Section 2.03(b)(4) of the MBCA. In addition, the articles of organization of each Massachusetts Subsidiary provide that, to the fullest extent permitted by the MBCA, a director of the company shall not be liable to the company or its shareholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director of the company.

### **Michigan Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Funeral Services of Michigan, Inc., a Michigan corporation (the “Michigan Subsidiary”).*

Section 450.1561 of the Michigan Business Corporation Act (“MIBC”) provides that a Michigan corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending, or completed action, suit, or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative and whether formal or informal, including an action by or in the right of the corporation to procure

---

[Table of Contents](#)

judgment in its favor, by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, partner, trustee, employee or agent of another foreign or domestic corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, whether for profit or not, against expenses, including attorneys' fees, judgments, penalties, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by him or her in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if the person acted in good faith and in a manner he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation or its shareholders, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, if the person had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. In connection with an action by or in the right of the corporation, indemnification may only be made for expenses, including attorney's fees, actually and reasonably incurred, and for judgments, penalties, fines, and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred. Section 450.1563 of the MIBCA states that, to the extent that a director, officer, employee, or agent of a corporation has been successful on the merits or other in defense of an action, suit, or proceeding, or in defense of a claim, issue, or matter in the action, suit, or proceeding, he or she shall be indemnified against actual and reasonable expenses, including attorneys' fee, incurred by him or her in connection with the action, suit or proceeding and an action, suit, or proceeding brought to enforce the mandatory indemnification provided in this section. Section 450.1567 of the MIBCA allows Michigan corporations to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of any of the persons described above, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such persons against liability under Sections 561 to 565 of the MIBCA.

The certificate of incorporation and bylaws of the Michigan Subsidiary contain provisions eliminating a director's personal liability for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except in circumstances involving: (i) a breach of a director's duty of loyalty to the corporation or its shareholders, (ii) acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or knowing violations of law, (iii) the unlawful payment of dividends or stock purchase or redemption, or (iv) transactions from which a director derived an improper personal benefit.

The bylaws of the Michigan Subsidiary contain provisions providing for the indemnification of officers and directors if the officer or director (i) acted in good faith, (ii) acted in a manner he or she reasonably believed to be in the best interest of the corporation or its shareholders, and (iii) submits a written claim for indemnification. In addition, the bylaws specifically authorize the corporation to purchase and maintain insurance to protect itself and its directors and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under its bylaws or the MIBCA.

#### **Nevada Additional Registrants**

*Carriage Services of Nevada, Inc., Carriage Municipal Cemetery Services of Nevada, Inc., each a Nevada corporation (each a "Nevada Subsidiary").*

Section 78.7502 of the Nevada Revised Statutes provides that a corporation may indemnify directors or officers who were, are, or are threatened to be made a party in a completed, pending or threatened proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative, by reason of the person's being or having been an officer or director of the corporation or serving in certain capacities at the request of the corporation. The person to be indemnified must have acted in good faith and in a manner he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and, with respect to any criminal action, such person must have had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful. With respect to actions by or in the right of the corporation, indemnification may not be made for any claim, issue or matter as to which such a person has been finally adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction to be liable to the corporation or for amounts paid in settlement to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that the court in which the action was brought or other court of competent jurisdiction determines upon application that in view of all circumstances the person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses as the court deems proper.



---

[Table of Contents](#)

Neither the bylaws or articles of incorporation of the Nevada Subsidiaries contain provisions regarding the indemnification of directors and officers or limitations on the liability of directors.

**New Mexico Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Services of New Mexico, Inc., a New Mexico corporation (the “New Mexico Subsidiary”).*

Section 53-11-4.1 of the New Mexico Business Corporation Act (“NMBCA”) empowers a corporation to indemnify any officer or director against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements, and reasonable expenses actually incurred by the person in connection with any threatened, pending, or completed action, suit, or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative, or investigative, if the person acted in good faith and (a) in the case of conduct in the person’s official capacity, that the person’s conduct was in the best interest of the corporation, and (b) in all other cases, the person’s conduct was at least not opposed to the corporation’s best interest, and (c) with respect to a criminal proceeding, the person had no reasonable cause to believe that his conduct was unlawful. Indemnification may be made against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by the person in connection with the proceeding, but may be limited or unavailable with respect to certain proceedings. In some instances, indemnification of a director may be mandatory or, upon the application of a director, may be ordered by a court. Reasonable expenses incurred by a director may, under certain circumstances, be paid or reimbursed in advance of a final disposition of a proceeding. Unless limited by its articles of incorporation, a corporation may (or, as the case may be, shall) indemnify and advance expenses to an officer of the corporation to the same extent as to a director under Section 53-11-4.1 of the NMBCA. Such section empowers a corporation to maintain insurance or furnish similar protection on behalf of any officer or director against any liability asserted against the person in such capacity whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify the person against such liability under the provisions described above. The indemnification provisions described above are not exclusive of any other rights to which an officer or director may be entitled under the articles of incorporation, the bylaws, an agreement, a resolution of shareholders or directors or otherwise.

Neither the bylaws or articles of incorporation of the New Mexico Subsidiary contain provisions regarding the indemnification of directors and officers or limitations on the liability of directors.

**Ohio Additional Registrant**

*CHC Insurance Agency of Ohio, Inc., an Ohio corporation (the “Ohio Subsidiary”).*

Section 1701.13(E)(1) of the Ohio General Corporation Law (“OGCL”) provides that a corporation may indemnify or agree to indemnify any person who was or is a party, or is threatened to be made a party, to any threatened, pending, or completed proceeding (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director or officer of the corporation, against expenses and liability reasonably incurred by the director or officer in connection with such proceeding if the director or officer acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe that this conduct was unlawful. In connection with any threatened, pending, or completed proceeding, by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor, no indemnification shall be made (subject to certain exceptions) if: (a) such person shall have been adjudged to be liable for negligence or misconduct in the performance of the person’s duty to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the court in which the proceeding was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability, in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses as such court shall deem proper; or (b) the only liability asserted against a director in a proceeding is for the director voting for or assenting to the following: the payment of a dividend or distribution, the making of a distribution of assets to shareholders, or the purchase or redemption of the corporation’s own shares in violation of Ohio law or the corporation’s articles of incorporation; a distribution of assets to shareholders during the winding up of the

---

[Table of Contents](#)

affairs of the corporation, or on dissolution or otherwise, without the payment of all known obligations of the corporation or without making adequate provision for their payment; or the making of a loan, other than in the usual course of business, to an officer, director or shareholder of the corporation other than in the case of at the time of the making of the loan, a majority of the disinterested directors of the corporation voted for the loan and, taking into account the terms and provisions of the loan and other relevant factors, determined that the making of the loan could reasonably be expected to benefit the corporation.

Section 1701.13(E) of the OGCL permits a corporation to pay expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by a director, officer, employee or agent as they are incurred, in advance of the final disposition of the action, suit or proceeding, as authorized by the corporation's directors and upon receipt of an undertaking by such person to repay such amount if it is ultimately determined that such person is not entitled to indemnification.

Section 1701.13(E) of the OGCL states that the indemnification provided thereby is not exclusive of, and is in addition to, any other rights granted to persons seeking indemnification under a corporation's articles or regulations, any agreement, a vote of the corporation's shareholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise. In addition, Section 1701.13(E) of the OGCL grants express power to a corporation to purchase and maintain insurance or furnish similar protection, including trust funds, letters of credit and self-insurance, for director, officer, employee or agent liability, regardless of whether that individual is otherwise eligible for indemnification by the corporation

The regulations of the Ohio Subsidiary contain indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its directors and officers if he acted in good faith and in a manner he reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. In addition, the regulations specifically authorize the corporation to purchase and maintain insurance to protect itself and its directors and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under its regulations.

### **Oklahoma Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Services of Oklahoma, L.L.C., an Oklahoma limited liability company (the "Oklahoma Subsidiary").*

Section 2003 of the Oklahoma Limited Liability Company Act ("OLLCA") provides that an Oklahoma limited liability company may indemnify and hold harmless any member, agent, or employee from and against any and all claims and demands whatsoever, except in the case of action or failure to act by the member, agent, or employee which constitutes willful misconduct or recklessness, and subject to the standards and restrictions, if any, set forth in the articles of organization or operating agreement.

Section 2017 of the Oklahoma Limited Liability Company Act ("OLLCA") provides that the articles of organization or operating agreement of a limited liability company may provide for the indemnification of members or managers of the company. Under the OLLCA, the articles of organization or operating agreement may also eliminate or limit the liability of a member or manager for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty, except in circumstances involving (i) a manager's breach of the duty of loyalty to the company or its members, (ii) acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or knowing violations of the law, or (iii) any transaction from which the manager derived an improper personal benefit.

The operating agreement of the Oklahoma Subsidiary contains indemnification provisions that provide for the indemnification of its managers and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the OLLCA. In addition, the operating agreement specifically authorizes the company to purchase and maintain insurance to protect itself and its managers and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the company would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under its operating agreement.

## **Texas Additional Registrant**

*Carriage Cemetery Services, Inc., a Texas corporation (the “Texas Subsidiary”)*

Chapter 8 of the Texas Business Organizations Code (the “TBOC”) permits a corporation to indemnify a director who was, is or is threatened to be a named defendant or respondent in a proceeding as a result of the performance of his duties if such person acted in good faith and, in the case of conduct in the person’s official capacity as a director, in a manner he reasonably believed to be in the best interests of the corporation and, in all other cases, that the person’s conduct was not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, that such person had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. The TBOC further permits a corporation to eliminate in its charter all monetary liability of the corporation’s directors to the corporation or its stockholders for conduct in performance of such director’s duties.

Sections 8.101 and 8.103 of the TBOC provide that a corporation may indemnify a person who was, is or is threatened to be a named defendant or respondent in a proceeding because the person is or was a director only if a determination is made that such indemnification is permissible under the TBOC: (i) by a majority vote of the directors who at the time of the vote are disinterested and independent, regardless of whether such directors constitute a quorum, (ii) by a majority vote of a board committee designated by a majority of disinterested and independent directors and consisting solely of disinterested and independent directors, (iii) by special legal counsel selected by the board of directors or a committee of the board of directors as set forth in (i) or (ii), (iv) by the stockholders in a vote that excludes the shares held by directors who are not disinterested and independent, or (v) by a unanimous vote of the stockholders.

Section 8.104 of the TBOC provides that the corporation may pay or reimburse, in advance of the final disposition of the proceeding, reasonable expenses incurred by a present director who was, is or is threatened to be made a named defendant or respondent in a proceeding after the corporation receives a written affirmation by the director of his good faith belief that he has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification under Section 8.101 and a written undertaking by or on behalf of the director to repay the amount paid or reimbursed if it is ultimately determined that he has not met that standard or if it is ultimately determined that indemnification of the director is not otherwise permitted under the TBOC. Section 8.105 also provides that reasonable expenses incurred by a former director or officer, or a present or former employee or agent of the corporation, who was, is or is threatened to be made a named defendant or respondent in a proceeding may be paid or reimbursed by the corporation, in advance of the final disposition of the action, as the corporation considers appropriate.

Section 8.105 of the TBOC provides that a corporation may indemnify and advance expenses to a person who is not a director, including an officer, employee or agent of the corporation as provided by: (i) the corporation’s governing documents, (ii) an action by the corporation’s governing authority, (iii) resolution by the stockholders, (iv) contract, or (v) common law. As consistent with Section 8.105, a corporation may indemnify and advance expenses to persons who are not directors to the same extent that a corporation may indemnify and advance expenses to directors.

The bylaws of the Texas Subsidiary contain indemnification provisions providing for the indemnification of directors only if it is determined that the director (i) conducted himself in good faith, (ii) reasonably believed that, in the case of conduct in his official capacity as a director or officer of the corporation, such conduct was in the corporation’s best interests; and, in all other cases, that such conduct was at least not opposed to the corporation’s best interests, and (iii) in the case of a criminal proceeding, he had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. If a director is wholly successful, on the merits or otherwise, in connection with such a proceeding, such indemnification is mandatory. The bylaws also provide that a court may order the indemnification of a director if the court, upon application of the director, determines that such director is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnification in view of the relevant circumstances. An officer of the corporation may be indemnified to the same extent as a director who is successful in a proceeding or who applies to a court for indemnification. The bylaws specifically authorize the corporation to purchase and maintain insurance to

[Table of Contents](#)

protect itself and its directors and officers against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such persons against such expense, liability or loss under its bylaws or the TBOC.

The articles of incorporation of the Texas Subsidiary provide that, to the fullest extent permitted by Texas law, a director of the corporation shall not be liable to the corporation or its shareholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director of the corporation.

**Item 16. Exhibits.**

<b><u>Exhibit No.</u></b>	<b><u>Description of Exhibit</u></b>
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement.*
2.1	Asset Sale Agreement, dated as of March 3, 2014, by and among Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc., Carriage Funeral Holdings, Inc., SCI Louisiana Funeral Services, Inc., S.E. Funeral Homes of Louisiana, LLC and S.E. Funeral Homes of Virginia, LLC. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed March 5, 2014.
4.1	Indenture, dated as of March 19, 2014, by and among Carriage Services, Inc. and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as Trustee. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed March 19, 2014.
4.2	Form of Senior Debt Indenture.**
4.3	Form of Subordinated Debt Indenture.**
4.4	Form of Senior Debt Securities.*
4.5	Form of Subordinated Debt Securities.*
4.6	Form of Warrant Agreement, including form of Warrant.*
4.7	Form of Subscription Rights Agreement and Form Subscription Rights Certificate.*
4.8	Form of Purchase Contract.*
4.9	Form of Unit Agreement.*
4.10	Form of Pledge Agreement.*
4.11	Form of Deposit Agreement.*
4.12	Form of Depositary Share.*
5.1	Opinion of Porter Hedges LLP with respect to legality of the securities, including consent.**
5.2	Opinion of Neil Verma, Legal Counsel of Carriage Services, Inc.**
12.1	Statement of Computation of Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges.**
23.1	Consent of Grant Thornton LLP**
23.2	Consent of Porter Hedges LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).
23.3	Consent of Neil Verma (included in Exhibit 5.2).
24.1	Power of Attorney (contained in signature pages).
25.1	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility and Qualification under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 of the Trustee under the Senior Indenture.***
25.2	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility and Qualification under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 of the Trustee under the Subordinated Indenture.***

- \* Carriage will file as an exhibit to a current report on Form 8-K (i) any underwriting agreement relating to securities offered hereby, (ii) the instruments setting forth the terms of any depositary shares, warrants, subscription rights, purchase contracts or units, (iii) any additional required opinion of counsel to Carriage as to the legality of the securities offered hereby or (iv) any required opinion of counsel to Carriage as to certain tax matters relative to securities offered hereby.
- \*\* Filed herewith.
- \*\*\* To be filed under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

**Item 17. Undertakings.**

(a) The undersigned registrants hereby undertake:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

*provided, however*, that paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii) and (a)(1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to section 13 or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(i) If the registrants are relying on Rule 430B:

(A) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(B) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii) or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of

the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date; or

(ii) If the registrants are subject to Rule 430C, each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.

(5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrants under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities:

The undersigned registrants undertake that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrants pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrants will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
- (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrants or used or referred to by the undersigned registrants;
- (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrants or their securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrants; and
- (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

(b) The undersigned registrants hereby undertake that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrants' annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

(c) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrants pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrants have been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrants of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrants in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

(d) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under Section 305(b)(2) of the Act.

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**

By: /s/ Viki King Blinderman  
Viki King Blinderman,  
Senior Vice President, Principal Financial  
Officer, Chief Accounting Officer and Secretary

**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Carriage Services, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable Carriage Services, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Senior Vice President, Principal Financial Officer, Chief Accounting Officer and Secretary (Principal Financial Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Adeola Olaniyan</u> Adeola Olaniyan	Corporate Controller and Principal Accounting Officer (Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Donald D. Patteson, Jr.</u> Donald D. Patteson Jr.	Director	April 10, 2017



---

[Table of Contents](#)

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ James R. Schneck</u> James R. Schenck	Director	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Barry K. Fingerhut</u> Barry K. Fingerhut	Director	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Bryan D. Leibman</u> Bryan D. Leibman	Director	April 10, 2017



**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Carriage Funeral Holdings, Inc., CFS Funeral Services, Inc., Carriage Holding Company, Inc., Carriage Funeral Services of Kentucky, Inc., Carriage Funeral Services of California, Inc., Carriage Cemetery Services of Idaho, Inc., Wilson & Kratzer Mortuaries, Rolling Hills Memorial Park, Carriage Services of Connecticut, Inc., CHC Insurance Agency of Ohio, Inc., Carriage Services of New Mexico, Inc., Carriage Cemetery Services, Inc., Carriage Services of Nevada, Inc., Hubbard Funeral Home, Inc., Carriage Municipal Cemetery Services of Nevada, Inc., Carriage Cemetery Services of California, Inc., Carriage Internet Strategies, Inc., Carriage Management, Inc., Cochrane’s Chapel of the Roses, Inc., Horizon Cremation Society, Inc., Carriage Life Events, Inc., Carriage Pennsylvania Holdings, Inc., Carriage Funeral Management Inc., Carriage Florida Holdings, Inc., Cloverdale Park, Inc., Cataudella Funeral Home, Inc., Carriage Merger VI, Inc., CSRE Holdings, Inc., PNCA, Inc., Carriage Operations, Inc., and Carriage Services of Tennessee, Inc. (collectively, the “Corporations”), hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable each of the Corporations to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer and President (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Vice President, Secretary and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Director	April 10, 2017

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**CARRIAGE SERVICES OF OKLAHOMA, L.L.C.  
CARRIAGE TEAM CALIFORNIA (CEMETERY), LLC  
CARRIAGE TEAM CALIFORNIA (FUNERAL), LLC  
CARRIAGE TEAM FLORIDA (CEMETERY), LLC  
CARRIAGE TEAM FLORIDA (FUNERAL), LLC  
CARRIAGE SERVICES OF OHIO, LLC  
CARRIAGE TEAM KANSAS, LLC**

By:           /s/ Viki King Blinderman            
Viki King Blinderman,  
Vice President and Secretary

**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and managers of Carriage Services of Oklahoma, L.L.C., Carriage Team California (Cemetery), LLC, Carriage Team California (Funeral), LLC, Carriage Team Florida (Cemetery), LLC, Carriage Team Florida (Funeral), LLC, Carriage Services of Ohio, LLC, and Carriage Team Kansas, LLC (collectively, the “Companies”), hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable each of the Companies to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer and President (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Vice President, Secretary and Manager (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Vice President, Treasurer and Manager	April 10, 2017

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**CARRIAGE FUNERAL SERVICES OF MICHIGAN, INC.**

By:           /s/ Viki King Blinderman            
Viki King Blinderman,  
Vice President and Secretary

**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Carriage Funeral Services of Michigan, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable Carriage Funeral Services of Michigan, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Bruce Francis</u> Bruce Francis	President and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Vice President and Secretary (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Vice President and Treasurer	April 10, 2017

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**CSI FUNERAL SERVICES OF MASSACHUSETTS, INC.**

By:           /s/ Viki King Blinderman            
Viki King Blinderman,  
Vice President and Secretary



**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of CSI Funeral Services of Massachusetts, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable CSI Funeral Services of Massachusetts, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Vice President, Secretary and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Vice President, Treasurer and Director	April 10, 2017

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**FORASTIERE FAMILY FUNERAL SERVICE, INC.**

By:           /s/ Viki King Blinderman            
Viki King Blinderman,  
Vice President and Secretary

**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Forastiere Family Funeral Service, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable Forastiere Family Funeral Service, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Vice President, Secretary and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Frank A. Forastiere</u> Frank A. Forastiere	President, Clerk and Director	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Vice President, Treasurer and Director	April 10, 2017

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**CARRIAGE INSURANCE AGENCY OF  
MASSACHUSETTS, INC.**

By:           /s/ Viki King Blinderman            
Viki King Blinderman,  
Vice President and Secretary

**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Carriage Insurance Agency of Massachusetts, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne, Carl Benjamin Brink and Viki King Blinderman, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable Carriage Insurance Agency of Massachusetts, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer and President (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Viki King Blinderman</u> Viki King Blinderman	Vice President, Secretary and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Frank A. Forastiere</u> Frank A. Forastiere	Treasurer and Director	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ JoAnn Skiba</u> JoAnn Skiba	Clerk and Director	April 10, 2017

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Houston, State of Texas, on the 10th day of April, 2017.

**CARRIAGE SERVICES INVESTMENT ADVISORS, INC.**

By:           /s/ Carl Benjamin Brink            
Carl Benjamin Brink,  
Treasurer

**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Carriage Services Investment Advisors, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne and Carl Benjamin Brink, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable Carriage Services Investment Advisors, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	Chief Executive Officer, President and Chairman of the Board (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Treasurer and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017





**POWER OF ATTORNEY AND SIGNATURES**

We the undersigned officers and directors of Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc., hereby, severally constitute and appoint Melvin C. Payne and Carl Benjamin Brink, each of them singly, our true and lawful attorneys with full power to them and each of them singly, to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below, the registration statement on Form S-3 filed herewith and any and all pre-effective and post-effective amendments to said registration statement and any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b) and generally to do all such things in our names and on our behalf in our capacities as officers and directors to enable Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statement and any and all amendments thereto or to any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed under Rule 462(b).

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Melvin C. Payne</u> Melvin C. Payne	President, Secretary and Chairman of the Board (Principal Executive Officer)	April 10, 2017
<u>/s/ Carl Benjamin Brink</u> Carl Benjamin Brink	Vice President, Treasurer and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 10, 2017

**CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**

**and**

**[                    ],**  
**Trustee**

---

**INDENTURE**

**Dated as of**

---

**SENIOR DEBT SECURITIES**

**CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**

**Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939  
and Indenture dated as of**

---

<u>Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939</u>	<u>Section(s) of Indenture</u>
§ 310 (a)(1)	609
(a)(2)	609
(a)(3)	Not Applicable
(a)(4)	Not Applicable
(b)	608, 610
§ 311 (a)	613
(b)	613
(c)	Not Applicable
§ 312 (a)	701, 702
(b)	702
(c)	702
§ 313 (a)	703
(b)	703
(c)	703
(d)	703
§ 314 (a)	704, 105
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	102
(c)(2)	102
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	102
§ 315 (a)	601
(b)	602
(c)	601
(d)	601
(d)(1)	603
(d)(2)	603
(d)(3)	601
(e)	514
§ 316 (a)(1)(A)	512
(a)(1)(B)	513
(a)(2)	Not Applicable
(a)(last sentence)	101
(b)	508
§ 317 (a)(1)	503
(a)(2)	504
(b)	1003
§ 318 (a)	107

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

# TRUST INDENTURE

## Table of Contents

	<b>Page</b>
<b>ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS</b>	<b>1</b>
Section 101. Definitions	1
Section 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions	7
Section 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	8
Section 104. Acts of Holders; Record Dates	8
Section 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company	10
Section 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver	10
Section 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	11
Section 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	11
Section 109. Successors and Assigns	11
Section 110. Separability Clause	11
Section 111. Benefits of Indenture	11
Section 112. Governing Law	12
Section 113. Legal Holidays	12
Section 114. Language of Notices, Etc	12
Section 115. Submission to Jurisdiction	12
Section 116. Corporate Obligation	12
<b>ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS</b>	<b>13</b>
Section 201. Forms Generally	13
Section 202. Form of Legend for Global Securities	13
Section 203. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	14
Section 204. Securities in Global Form	14
<b>ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES</b>	<b>15</b>
Section 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable In Series	15
Section 302. Denominations	18
Section 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	19
Section 304. Temporary Securities	20
Section 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	21
Section 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	22
Section 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved	22
Section 308. Persons Deemed Owners	24
Section 309. Cancellation	24
Section 310. Computation of Interest	24
Section 311. CUSIP Numbers	24
<b>ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE</b>	<b>24</b>
Section 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	24
Section 402. Application of Trust Money	26

<b>ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES</b>	<b>26</b>
Section 501. Events of Default	26
Section 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	27
Section 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	28
Section 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	29
Section 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	30
Section 506. Application of Money Collected	30
Section 507. Limitation on Suits	30
Section 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	31
Section 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies	31
Section 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative	31
Section 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver	31
Section 512. Control by Holders	32
Section 513. Waiver of Past Defaults	32
Section 514. Undertaking for Costs	32
Section 515. Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws	33
<b>ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE</b>	<b>33</b>
Section 601. Certain Duties and Responsibilities	33
Section 602. Notice of Defaults	34
Section 603. Certain Rights of Trustee	34
Section 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	37
Section 605. May Hold Securities	37
Section 606. Money Held in Trust	37
Section 607. Compensation and Reimbursement	37
Section 608. Conflicting Interests	38
Section 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	38
Section 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	38
Section 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	40
Section 612. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	41
Section 613. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	41
Section 614. Appointment of Authenticating Agent	42
<b>ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY</b>	<b>43</b>
Section 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	43
Section 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	44
Section 703. Reports by Trustee	44
Section 704. Reports by Company	44
<b>ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE</b>	<b>45</b>
Section 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	45
Section 802. Successor Substituted	46

<b>ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES</b>	<b>46</b>
Section 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	46
Section 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders	47
Section 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures	48
Section 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures	48
Section 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act	49
Section 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	49
<b>ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS</b>	<b>49</b>
Section 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest	49
Section 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency	49
Section 1003. Money for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust	50
Section 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default	51
Section 1005. Existence	51
Section 1006. Waiver of Certain Covenants	51
Section 1007. Additional Amounts	51
<b>ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>52</b>
Section 1101. Applicability of Article	52
Section 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	52
Section 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed	53
Section 1104. Notice of Redemption	53
Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price	54
Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date	54
Section 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part	55
Section 1108. Purchase of Securities	55
<b>ARTICLE TWELVE SINKING FUNDS</b>	<b>55</b>
Section 1201. Applicability of Article	55
Section 1202. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	56
Section 1203. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	56
<b>ARTICLE THIRTEEN LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE</b>	<b>56</b>
Section 1301. Company's Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	56
Section 1302. Legal Defeasance and Discharge	56
Section 1303. Covenant Defeasance	57
Section 1304. Conditions to Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	57
Section 1305. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions	59
Section 1306. Reinstatement	59
Section 1307. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust	60
<b>ARTICLE FOURTEEN MEETING OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>60</b>
Section 1401. Purposes for which Meetings may be Called	60

---

Section 1402.	Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	60
Section 1403.	Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	61
Section 1404.	Quorum; Action	61
Section 1405.	Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	62
Section 1406.	Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	63

INDENTURE, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, between Carriage Services, Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (herein called the “**Company**”), having its principal office at 3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300, Houston, Texas 77056, and [ \_\_\_\_\_ ], a national banking association organized under the laws of the United States., as Trustee (herein called the “**Trustee**”).

## RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “**Securities**”), which may be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Persons (including the Company), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid and legally binding agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

## ARTICLE ONE

### DEFINITIONS

#### Section 101. *Definitions* .

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles; the term “**generally accepted accounting principles**” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted as consistently applied by the Company at the date of such computation;
- (4) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article”, a “Section” or an “Exhibit” refers to an Article, a Section or an Exhibit, as the case may be, of or to this Indenture; and



(5) the words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used principally in *Article Six* and *Article Thirteen* , are defined in those Articles.

“ *Act* ”, when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in *Section 104* .

“ *Affiliate* ” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“ *Authenticating Agent* ” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to *Section 614* to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“ *Authorized Newspaper* ” means a newspaper, in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily published on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same city meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any Business Day.

“ *Board of Directors* ” means either the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of that board.

“ *Board Resolution* ” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“ *Business Day* ”, when used with respect to any Place of Payment, means each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday that is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“ *Commission* ” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument the United States Securities and Exchange Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“ *Company* ” means the Person named as the “ *Company* ” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “ *Company* ” shall mean such successor Person.

“ **Company Request** ” or “ **Company Order** ” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, its Chief Executive Officer, or one of its executive Vice Presidents, and by its Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

“ **Corporate Trust Office** ” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business related to this Indenture shall be administered, which as of the date hereof is located at \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Company.

“ **corporation** ” means a corporation, association, company, joint-stock company or business trust.

“ **covenant defeasance** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 1303** .

“ **Defaulted Interest** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 307** .

“ **Depository** ” means, with respect to Securities of any series issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as Depository for such Securities as contemplated by **Section 301** .

“ **Event of Default** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 501** .

“ **Exchange Act** ” means the United States Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“ **Expiration Date** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 104** .

“ **Global Security** ” means a Security that evidences all or part of the Securities of any series and bears the legend set forth in **Section 202** (or such legend as may be specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities).

“ **Government Obligation** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 1304** .

“ **Holder** ” means the Person in whose name the Security is registered in the Security Register.

“ **Indenture** ” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “ **Indenture** ” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by **Section 301** .

“ **interest** ”, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

---

“ **Interest Payment Date** ”, when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“ **Investment Company Act** ” means the United States Investment Company Act of 1940 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“ **legal defeasance** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 1302** .

“ **Maturity** ”, when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“ **Notice of Default** ” means a written notice of the kind specified in **Section 501(4)** .

“ **Officers’ Certificate** ” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer, or an executive Vice President, and by the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee. One of the officers signing an Officers’ Certificate given pursuant to **Section 1004** shall be the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company.

“ **Opinion of Counsel** ” means a written opinion from legal counsel who is reasonably acceptable to the Trustee, who may be counsel for or an employee of the Company.

“ **Original Issue Discount Security** ” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to **Section 502** .

“ **Outstanding** ”, when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (1) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (2) Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities; *provided* that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;
- (3) Securities as to which legal defeasance has been effected pursuant to **Section 1302** ; and
- (4) Securities that have been paid pursuant to **Section 1001** or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a bona

---

fide purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company; *provided, however*, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver, or other action hereunder as of any date or whether a quorum is present at a meeting of Holders of Securities, (A) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof to such date pursuant to **Section 502**, (B) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Security is not determinable, the principal amount of such Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount as specified or determined as contemplated by **Section 301**, (C) the principal amount of a Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the U.S. dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner provided as contemplated by **Section 301**, of the principal amount of such Security (or, in the case of a Security described in clause (A) or (B) above, of the amount determined as provided in such clause), and (D) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver, or other action, or upon any such determination as to the presence of a quorum, only Securities that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

“ **Paying Agent** ” means any Person, which may include the Company, authorized by the Company to pay the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“ **Person** ” means any individual, corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“ **Place of Payment** ”, when used with respect to the Securities of any series, means the place or places specified in accordance with **Section 301** where the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series are payable.

“ **Predecessor Security** ” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under **Section 306** in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

---

“ **Redemption Date** ”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“ **Redemption Price** ”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“ **Regular Record Date** ” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Securities of any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by **Section 301** .

“ **Responsible Officer** ”, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any vice president, any assistant treasurer, any trust officer or assistant trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“ **Securities** ” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture *provided, however*, that if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, “Securities” with respect to the Indenture as to which such Person is Trustee shall have the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and shall more particularly mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

“ **Securities Act** ” means the United States Securities Act of 1933 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“ **Security Register** ” and “ **Security Registrar** ” have the respective meanings specified in **Section 305** .

“ **Special Record Date** ” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Company pursuant to **Section 307** .

“ **Stated Maturity** ”, when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“ **Subsidiary** ” means a corporation, limited liability company, limited partnership, or other entity more than 50% of the outstanding voting stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by the Company or by one or more other Subsidiaries, or by the Company and one or more other Subsidiaries. For the purposes of this definition, “voting stock” means the equity interest that ordinarily has voting power for the election of directors, managers, trustees or general partners of an entity, or persons performing similar functions, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of equity interest has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

“ **Trust Indenture Act** ” means the United States Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; *provided, however,* that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “ **Trust Indenture Act** ” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“ **Trustee** ” means the Person named as the “ **Trustee** ” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“ **United States Alien** ” means any Person who, for United States Federal income tax purposes, is a foreign corporation, a non-resident alien individual, a non-resident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust, or a foreign partnership one or more of the members of which is, for United States Federal income tax purposes, a foreign corporation, a non-resident alien individual or a non-resident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust.

“ **Vice President** ”, when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “ *vice presiden t* ”.

#### Section 102. *Compliance Certificates and Opinions* .

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee such certificates and opinions stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with. Each such certificate or opinion shall be given in the form of an Officers’ Certificate, if to be given by an officer of the Company, or an Opinion of Counsel, if to be given by counsel, and shall comply with the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act and any other requirements set forth in this Indenture.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (except for certificates provided for in **Section 1004** ) shall include,

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and
- (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 103. *Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee* .

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 104. *Acts of Holders; Record Dates* .

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by agent duly appointed in writing. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the “*Act*” of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments, and shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to **Section 601**) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustee deems sufficient.

The principal amount and serial numbers of Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, shall be proved by the Security Register.

---

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

The Company may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to give, make or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders of Securities of such series, *provided*, that the Company may not set a record date for, and the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to, the giving or making of any notice, declaration, request or direction referred to in the next paragraph. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to take the relevant action, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; *provided*, that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Company from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Company, at its own expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Trustee in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**.

The Trustee may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to join in the giving or making of (i) any Notice of Default, (ii) any declaration of acceleration referred to in **Section 502**, (iii) any request to institute proceedings referred to in **Section 507(2)** or (iv) any direction referred to in **Section 512**, in each case with respect to Securities of such series. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; *provided*, that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Trustee from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Trustee, at the Company's expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Company in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**.



With respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto that sets such record date may designate any day as the “*Expiration Date*” and from time to time may change the Expiration Date to any earlier or later day; *provided* that no such change shall be effective unless notice of the proposed new Expiration Date is given to the other party hereto in writing, and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in *Section 106*, on or prior to the existing Expiration Date. If an Expiration Date is not designated with respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto that set such record date shall be deemed to have initially designated the 180th day after such record date as the Expiration Date with respect thereto, subject to its right to change the Expiration Date as provided in this paragraph.

Without limiting the foregoing, a Holder entitled hereunder to take any action hereunder with regard to any particular Security may do so with regard to all or any part of the principal amount of such Security or by one or more duly appointed agents each of which may do so pursuant to such appointment with regard to all or any part of such principal amount.

*Section 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company .*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing (which may be via facsimile) to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration, or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

*Section 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver .*

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, where this Indenture provides for notice of any event to Holders of Securities, such notice shall be sufficiently given to Holders of Securities if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder of a Security affected by such event, at the address of such Holder as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice to Holders of Securities by mail, then such notification as shall be made in a manner directed by the Company or as provided in a supplemental indenture hereto shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder. In any case where notice to Holders of Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder of a Security shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders.

Where this Indenture provides for notice of any event (including any notice of redemption) to any Holder of a Global Security (whether by mail or otherwise), such notice shall be sufficiently given if given to the Depository for such Security (or its designee), according to the applicable procedures of the Depository, if any, prescribed for the giving of such notice.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders of Securities shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

*Section 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act .*

This Indenture shall incorporate and be governed by the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are required to be part of and to govern indentures qualified under the Trust Indenture Act. If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act that is required under such Act to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the latter provision shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act that may be so modified or excluded, the former provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

*Section 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents .*

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

*Section 109. Successors and Assigns .*

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

*Section 110. Separability Clause .*

In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

*Section 111. Benefits of Indenture .*

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, and the Holders of Securities, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 112. *Governing Law ; Waiver of Jury Trial .*

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York. THE COMPANY, THE TRUSTEE, AND EACH HOLDER HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE, THE SECURITIES OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

Section 113. *Legal Holidays .*

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or Stated Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of the Securities (other than a provision of any Security which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section)) payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date or Redemption Date, or at the Stated Maturity; provided, however, that no interest will accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or Stated Maturity, as the case may be, to such Business Day if such payment is made on such Business Day.

Section 114. *Language of Notices, Etc .*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Section 115. *Submission to Jurisdiction .*

The Company irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any federal or state court in the City, County and State of New York, United States, and any appellate court from any thereof, in any legal suit, action or proceeding based on or arising under the Securities or this Indenture and agrees that all claims in respect of such suit or proceeding may be determined in any such court. The Company irrevocably waives to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection to any such suit, including actions, suits or proceedings relating to the securities laws of the United States of America or any state thereof, in such courts whether on the grounds of venue, residence or domicile or the defense of an inconvenient forum or objections to personal jurisdiction with respect to the maintenance of such legal suit, action or proceeding. The Company agrees that the final judgment in any such suit, action or proceeding brought in such court shall be conclusive and binding upon the Company and may be enforced in any court to the jurisdiction of which the Company is subject by a suit upon such judgment.

Section 116. *Corporate Obligation .*

No recourse may be taken, directly or indirectly, against any incorporator, subscriber to the capital stock, stockholder, officer, director or employee of the Company or the Trustee or of any predecessor or successor of the Company or the Trustee with respect to the Company's obligations on the Securities or the obligations of the Company or the Trustee under this Indenture or any certificate or other writing delivered in connection herewith.

Section 117. *Patriot Act.*

The parties hereto acknowledge that in accordance with Section 326 of the U.S.A. PATRIOT Act, the Trustee is required to obtain, verify, and record information that identifies each person or legal entity that establishes a relationship or opens an account with the Trustee. The parties to this Indenture agree that they will provide the Trustee with such information as it may request in order for the Trustee to satisfy the requirements of the U.S.A. PATRIOT Act.

**ARTICLE TWO**

**SECURITY FORMS**

Section 201. *Forms Generally.*

The Securities of each series shall be in substantially the form of forms as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or Depositary therefor or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities as evidenced by their execution thereof. If the form of Securities of any series is established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by **Section 303** for the authentication and delivery of such Securities (or any such temporary global Security).

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

Section 202. *Form of Legend for Global Securities.*

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for the Securities evidenced thereby, every Global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

Section 203. *Form of Trustee 's Certificate of Authentication* .

The Trustee's certificates of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

"This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_  
As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
*Authorized Signatory*

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_"

Section 204. *Securities in Global Form* .

If Securities of or within a series are issuable in global form, as specified as contemplated by **Section 301** , then any such Security shall represent such of the Outstanding Securities of such series as shall be specified therein and may provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities represented thereby may from time to time be reduced to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of a Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made by the Trustee in such manner and upon instructions given by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or in the Company Order to be delivered to the Trustee pursuant to **Section 303** or **Section 304** . Subject to the provisions of **Section 303** and, if applicable, **Section 304** , the Trustee shall deliver and redeliver any Security in permanent global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to **Section 303** or **Section 304** has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to endorsement or delivery or redelivery of a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not comply with **Section 102** and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel.

The provisions of the last sentence of **Section 303** shall apply to any Security represented by a Security in global form if such Security was never issued and sold by the Company and the Company delivers to the Trustee the Security in global form together with written instructions (which need not comply with **Section 102** and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) with regard to the reduction in the principal amount of Securities represented thereby, together with the written statement contemplated by the last sentence of **Section 303** .

Notwithstanding the provisions of **Section 307** , unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** , payment of principal of and any premium and interest on any Security in permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

---

**ARTICLE THREE**

**THE SECURITIES**

Section 301. *Amount Unlimited; Issuable In Series* .

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and, subject to **Section 303** , set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series,

- (1) the title of the Securities of the series, including CUSIP numbers, if applicable (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from Securities of any other series);
- (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to **Section 304, 305, 306, 906 or 1107** and except for any Securities which, pursuant to **Section 303** , are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);
- (3) the Trustees, Authenticating Agents, Paying Agents, Security Registrars or other agents with respect to the series;
- (4) the Person to whom any interest on any Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid if other than in the manner provided in **Section 304** ;
- (5) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable;
- (6) the ability to issue additional Securities in the same series;
- (7) the price or prices at which the Securities will be sold;
- (8) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of any such deferral period, including the maximum consecutive period during which interest payment periods may be extended;
- (9) provisions, if any, granting special rights to holders of the Securities upon the occurrence of specified events;

(10) the terms, if any, upon which Holders may convert or exchange (or upon which the Company may require Holders to convert or exchange) the Securities of the series into or for the common stock, preferred stock or other securities or property of the Company or of another Person (or upon which the Securities of the series shall automatically convert or be exchanged into or for such other securities or property);

(11) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, which may be fixed or variable, or the method by which such rate shall be determined, the date or dates from which any such interest shall accrue, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable, and the Regular Record Date for the interest payable on any Securities on any Interest Payment Date;

(12) in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities, the rate of accretion of principal, which may be fixed or variable, or the method of determining such rate, and the date or dates from which principal will accrete or the method by which such date or dates will be determined;

(13) the place or places where, subject to the provisions of *Section 1002*, the principal of and any premium, if any, and interest, if any, on Securities of the series shall be payable, where any Securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, where Securities of the series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of the series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of the series and this Indenture may be served;

(14) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part at the option of the Company (including whether the redemption may be made conditional upon events occurring after the delivery or publication of the notice of redemption) and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to redeem the Securities shall be evidenced;

(15) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase any Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of the Holders thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series shall be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(16) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which any Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(17) whether the amount of payments of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which index, formula or method may be based, without limitation, on one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices), and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(18) the currency or currencies, including currency units or composite currencies, in which payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable if other than the currency of the United States of America and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for purposes of the definition of “ **Outstanding** ” in **Section 101** ;

(19) if the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series is to be payable, at the election of the Company or the Holder thereof, in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are stated to be payable, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on such Securities as to which such election is made shall be payable, the periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amount so payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined);

(20) if other than the entire principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to **Section 502** ;

(21) the collateral, if any, securing the Securities of the series, and the guarantors, if any, who will guarantee the Securities of the series, or the methods of determining such collateral, if any, and such guarantors, if any;

(22) whether the amount of principal, premium, if any, and interest on the Securities of the series may be determined by reference to an index, formula or other method, such as one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices, and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(23) if the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of any Securities of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the Stated Maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such Securities as of any such date for any purpose thereunder or hereunder, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any Maturity other than the Stated Maturity or which shall be deemed to be Outstanding as of any date prior to the Stated Maturity (or, in any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined);

(24) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or any specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to **Section 1302 or Section 1303** or both such Sections and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced;

(25) if applicable, that any Securities of the series shall be issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and, in such case, the respective Depositaries for such Global Securities, the form of any legend or legends which shall be borne by any such Global Security in addition to or in lieu of that set forth in **Section 202** and any circumstances in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in the legend set forth in



**Section 202** in which any such Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and any transfer of such Global Security in whole or in part may be registered in the name or names of Persons other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof;

(26) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which apply to any Securities of the series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to **Section 502** ;

(27) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in **Article Ten** which applies to Securities of the series, including any limitation on the Company's ability to incur debt, redeem stock or sell its assets;

(28) whether, under what circumstances and the currency in which the Company will pay additional amounts as contemplated by **Section 1007** on the Securities of the series to any Holder who is not a United States Person(s) (including any modification to the definition of such term) in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether the Company will have the option to redeem such Securities rather than pay such additional amounts (and the terms of any such option);

(29) provisions, if any, granting special rights to holders of Securities of the series upon the occurrence of specified events; and

(30) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by **Section 901 or 902** ), including the stated intervals of time the Trustee shall be required to transmit reports pursuant to Section 313(a) of the Act.

All Securities of such series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture referred to above and (subject to **Section 303** ) set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto. If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

#### Section 302. *Denominations* .

Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by **Section 301** with respect to the Securities of any series, any Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

Section 303. *Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating* .

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, its Chief Executive Officer, or one of its executive Vice Presidents, attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, an Officer's Certificate, and an Opinion of Counsel, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If the forms or terms of the Securities of the series have been established by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions as permitted by **Sections 201 and 301** , in authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to **Section 601** ) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating,

(1) if the forms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by **Section 201** , that such forms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;

(2) if the terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by **Section 301** , that such terms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and

(3) that such Securities when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general principles of equity.

If the authentication and delivery relates to a new series of Securities created by an indenture supplemental hereto, such Opinion of Counsel shall also state that all conditions precedent to the execution of the supplemental indenture with respect to that series of Securities have been complied with, the Company has the power to execute and deliver such supplemental indenture and has taken all necessary action for those purposes and any such supplemental indenture has been executed and delivered and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles. The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties, liabilities or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

---

Notwithstanding the provisions of **Section 301** and of the two preceding paragraphs, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to **Section 301** or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to such preceding paragraphs at or prior to the authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in **Section 309**, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

*Section 304. Temporary Securities .*

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of that series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor one or more definitive Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and like aggregate principal amount and tenor.

Until exchanged in full as hereinafter provided, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 305. *Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange* .

The Company shall cause to be kept at an office or agency to be maintained by the Company in accordance with **Section 1002** a register (being the combined register of the Security Registrar and all transfer agents designated pursuant to **Section 1002** for the purpose of registration of transfer of Securities and sometimes collectively referred to as the “**Security Register**”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities and the registration of transfers of Securities. The Trustee is hereby appointed “**Security Registrar**” for the purpose of registering Securities and transfers of Securities as herein provided.

Except as otherwise provided in **Section 203** or as may be provided as contemplated by **Section 301** , upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of a series at the office or agency of the Company maintained pursuant to **Section 1002** for such purpose in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

At the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee or any transfer agent) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar or any transfer agent duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to **Section 304, 906 or 1107** not involving any transfer.

If the Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, the Company shall not be required to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities of that series to be redeemed and ending at the close of business on the day of the delivery of the relevant notice of redemption.

The transferor shall also provide or cause to be provided to the Trustee all information necessary to allow the Trustee to comply with any applicable tax reporting obligations, including without limitation, any cost basis reporting obligations under Section 6045 of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). The Trustee may rely on any such information provided to it and shall have no responsibility to verify or ensure the accuracy of such information.

*Section 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities .*

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the previous two paragraphs, in case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

*Section 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved .*

Except as otherwise provided as contemplated by **Section 301** with respect to any series of Securities, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

---

Any interest on any Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called “**Defaulted Interest**”) after any applicable grace period shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date (a “**Special Record Date**”) for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this Clause provided. Thereupon the Company shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Company shall promptly notify the Trustee of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, the Trustee shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given to each Holder of Securities of such series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so sent, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following Clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this Clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and **Section 305**, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

Section 308. *Persons Deemed Owners* .

Prior to due presentment of a Security at maturity, redemption or for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and any premium and (subject to **Section 305 and Section 307**) any interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

Section 309. *Cancellation* .

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of in the Trustee's customary manner.

Section 310. *Computation of Interest* .

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for Securities of any series, interest on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

Section 311. *CUSIP Numbers* .

The Company in issuing the Securities may use "**CUSIP**" numbers, ISINs and "**Common Code**" numbers (in each case if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use such "**CUSIP**" numbers, ISINs and "Common Code" numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; *provided* that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company will notify the Trustee in writing of any change in "**CUSIP**" numbers, ISINs or "**Common Code**" numbers.

## ARTICLE FOUR

### SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

Section 401. *Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture* .

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities herein expressly provided for, and any right to receive additional amounts, as provided in **Section 1007**), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when

(1) either

(A) all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than Securities which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in **Section 306** and Securities for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in **Section 1003**) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation:

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose money in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under **Section 607**, the obligations of the Company to any Authenticating Agent under **Section 614** and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under **Section 402** and the last paragraph of **Section 1003** shall survive such satisfaction and discharge.



Section 402. *Application of Trust Money* .

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of *Section 1003* , all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to *Section 401* shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and any premium and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee.

**ARTICLE FIVE**

**REMEDIES**

Section 501. *Events of Default* .

“ *Event of Default* ”, wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or,

(2) default in the payment of the principal of or any premium on any Security of that series at its Maturity and (if so established as contemplated by *Section 301* in respect of that series), in the case of technical or administrative difficulties only if such default persists for a period of five days; or

(3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of a Security of that series; or

(4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “ *Notice of Default* ” hereunder; or

(5) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company a bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition

of or in respect of the Company under any applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or

(6) the commencement by the Company of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, of the consent by it to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due; or

(7) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

Section 502. *Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment* .

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default specified in **Section 501(5) or 501(6)**) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may declare the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in **Section 501(5) or 501(6)** with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) shall automatically, and without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay

(A) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel,

(B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and any interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,

(C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and

(D) all overdue interest on all Securities of that series ; and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that series which has become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in **Section 513** .

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

*Section 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee .*

The Company covenants that if

(1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or

(2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof,

the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal and premium and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances, of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem reasonably necessary to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 504. *Trustee May File Proofs of Claim* .

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal (or lesser amount in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal (and premium, if any) or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

(1) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or lesser amount in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) (and premium, if any) and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and

(2) to collect and receive any monies or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same;

and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under **Section 607** .

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceedings; *provided, however*, that the Trustee may on behalf of the Holders, vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and be a member of a creditors' or other similar committee.

Section 505. *Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities* .

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 506. *Application of Money Collected* .

Any money or property collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money or property on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due hereunder to the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder);

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively; and

THIRD: To the Company.

Section 507. *Limitation on Suits* .

Subject to **Section 508** , no Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

(1) an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing and such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;

(2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;

(3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee an indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

---

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

(5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

Section 508. *Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest* .

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to **Sections 305 and 307**) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 509. *Restoration of Rights and Remedies* .

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder; then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 510. *Rights and Remedies Cumulative* .

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of **Section 306**, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 511. *Delay or Omission Not Waiver* .

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

Section 512. *Control by Holders* .

Subject to **Section 603(5)** , with respect to the Securities of any series, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, *provided* that

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture, and
- (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

Section 513. *Waiver of Past Defaults* .

The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default

- (1) in the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of such series, or
- (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 514. *Undertaking for Costs* .

All parties to this Indenture agree and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed that in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in the Trust Indenture Act; *provided* that neither this Section nor the Trust Indenture Act shall be deemed to authorize any court to require such an undertaking or to make such an assessment in any suit instituted by the Company or the Trustee.

Section 515. *Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws* .

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

**ARTICLE SIX**

**THE TRUSTEE**

Section 601. *Certain Duties and Responsibilities* .

The duties and responsibilities of the Trustee shall be as provided in this Indenture and by the Trust Indenture Act.

(a) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series of which a Responsible Officer of the Indenture Trustee has actual knowledge,

(i) the Trustee undertakes to perform, with respect to Securities of such series, such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may, with respect to Securities of such series, conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture.

(b) If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise, with respect to Securities of such series, such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that



---

(1) this subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of sub-section (a) of this Section;

(2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any one or more series, as provided herein, relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(4) no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers.

(d) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

Section 602. *Notice of Defaults* .

If a default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series that is actually known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act. The Trustee may withhold from the Holders notice of any continuing default, except a Default relating to the payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, if it withholding such notice would be in the interest of Holders. For the purpose of this Section, the term “default” means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

Section 603. *Certain Rights of Trustee* .

Subject to the provisions of **Section 601** :

(1) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document (whether in its original or facsimile form) believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order, and any resolution of the Board of Directors shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on its part, conclusively rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(4) the Trustee may consult with counsel of its own selection and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;

(6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;

(7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(8) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered, or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and reasonably believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(9) the Trustee shall not be deemed to have, or required to take, notice of any default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture and specifies that such notice is a notice of an Event of Default;

(10) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and the Person employed to act hereunder;

(11) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officers' Certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded;

(12) the permissive rights of the Trustee enumerated herein shall not be construed as duties;

(13) in no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect, or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;

(14) the Trustee shall not be required to give any bond or surety in respect of the execution of the trusts and powers or otherwise in respect of this indenture;

(15) under no circumstances shall the Trustee be liable in its individual capacity for the obligations evidenced by the securities;

(16) the Trustee shall not be liable or responsible for any action or inaction of the Depository or any other clearinghouse or depository;

(17) the Trustee shall have no obligation to undertake any calculation hereunder or have any liability for any calculation performed in connection herewith or the transactions contemplated hereunder;

(18) the Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture arising out of or caused, directly or indirectly, by circumstances beyond its control, including acts of God; earthquakes; fire; flood; terrorism; wars and other military disturbances; sabotage; epidemics; riots; interruptions; loss or malfunctions of utilities, computer (hardware or software) or communication services; accidents; labor disputes; acts of civil or military authority and governmental action; and

(19) for certain payments made pursuant to this Indenture, the Trustee may be required to make a "reportable payment" or "withholdable payment" and in such cases the Trustee shall have the duty to act as a payor or withholding agent, respectively, that is responsible for any tax withholding and reporting required under Chapters 3, 4 and 61 of the Code. The Trustee shall have the sole right to make the determination as to which payments are "reportable payments" or "withholdable payments." All parties to this Indenture shall provide an executed IRS Form W-9 or appropriate IRS Form W-8 (or, in each case, any successor form) to the Trustee prior to closing, and shall promptly update any such form to the extent such form becomes obsolete or inaccurate in any respect. The Trustee shall have the right to request from any party to this Indenture, or any other Person entitled to payment hereunder, any additional forms, documentation or other information as may be reasonably necessary for the Trustee to satisfy its reporting and withholding obligations under the Code. To the extent any such forms to be delivered

---

under this Section 603 are not provided prior to or by the time the related payment is required to be made or are determined by the Trustee to be incomplete and/or inaccurate in any respect, the Trustee shall be entitled to withhold on any such payments hereunder to the extent withholding is required under Chapters 3, 4 or 61 of the Code, and shall have no obligation to gross up any such payment.

Section 604. *Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities* .

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

Section 605. *May Hold Securities* .

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to **Sections 608** and **613** , may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

Section 606. *Money Held in Trust* .

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest or investment on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

Section 607. *Compensation and Reimbursement* .

The Company agrees

(1) to pay to the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder) from time to time such compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder as shall be agreed in writing between the Company and the Trustee (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

(2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder) in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as shall be determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to have been caused by its own negligence or willful misconduct; and

(3) to indemnify the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder) and any predecessor Trustee for, to protect and to hold it harmless against, any and all loss, liability claim, damage or expense, including taxes (other than those based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee), incurred without negligence or willful misconduct on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim (whether asserted by the Company, any Holder or any other Person) or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder or in connection with enforcing the provisions of this Section.

This Section shall survive the termination of the Indenture and the resignation or removal of the Trustee.

To secure the payment obligations of the Company in this Section 607, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities on all money or property held or collected by the Trustee, except that held in trust to pay principal and interest on any particular Securities. Such lien shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture.

*Section 608. Conflicting Interests .*

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture. To the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest by virtue of being a trustee under this Indenture with respect to Securities of more than one series.

*Section 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility .*

There shall at all times be one (and only one) Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of each series, which may be Trustee hereunder for Securities of one or more other series. Each Trustee shall be a Person that is eligible pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act to act as such and has a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If any such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section and to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

*Section 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor .*

No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of **Section 611** .

The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by **Section 611** shall not have been delivered to the resigning Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction at the expense of the Company for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Trustee may be removed upon 30 days prior written notice with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with **Section 608** after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under **Section 609** and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Holder, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, (A) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (B) subject to **Section 514**, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of removal, the Trustee being removed may petition, at the expense of the Company, any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of **Section 611**. If, within one year after the successor trustee takes office, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of **Section 611**, become the successor Trustee with

---

respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series and accepted appointment in the manner required by **Section 611** , any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to all Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided in **Section 106** . Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

Notwithstanding replacement of the Trustee pursuant to this Section 610, the Company's obligations under Section 607 shall continue for the benefit of the retiring Trustee.

*Section 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor .*

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture

the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates.

Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in the first or second preceding paragraph, as the case may be.

No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

Section 612. *Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business* .

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, *provided* such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

Section 613. *Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company* .

If and when the Trustee shall be or become a creditor of the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities), the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of **Section 311** of the Trust Indenture Act, but only to the extent therein specified, regarding the collection of claims against the Company (or any such other obligor). For purposes of **Section 311(b)(4) and (6)** of such Act, the following terms shall mean:

(a) “ **cash transaction** ” means any transaction in which full payment for goods or securities sold is made within seven days after delivery of the goods or securities in currency or in checks or other orders drawn upon banks or bankers and payable upon demand; and

(b) “ **self-liquidating paper** ” means any draft, bill of exchange, acceptance or obligation which is made, drawn, negotiated or incurred by the Company for the purpose of financing the purchase, processing, manufacturing, shipment, storage or sale of goods, wares or merchandise and which is secured by documents evidencing title to, possession of, or a lien upon, the goods, wares or



---

merchandise or the receivables or proceeds arising from the sale of the goods, wares or merchandise previously constituting the security, *provided* the security is received by the Trustee simultaneously with the creation of the creditor relationship with the Company arising from the making, drawing, negotiating or incurring of the draft, bill of exchange, acceptance or obligation.

Section 614. *Appointment of Authenticating Agent* .

The Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue and upon exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to **Section 306** , and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Any such appointment shall be evidenced by an instrument in writing signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, and a copy of such instrument shall be promptly furnished to the Company. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, *provided* such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give notice of such appointment in the manner provided in

**Section 106** to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternative certificate of authentication in the following form:

"This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_,  
As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
As Authenticating Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Officer"

If all of the Securities of a series may not be originally issued at one time, and if the Trustee does not have an office capable of authenticating Securities upon original issuance located in a Place of Payment where the Company wishes to have Securities of such series authenticated upon original issuance, the Trustee, if so requested by the Company in writing (which writing need not comply with **Section 102** and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel), shall appoint in accordance with this Section an Authenticating Agent having an office in a Place of Payment designated by the Company with respect to such series of Securities.

## ARTICLE SEVEN

### HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

Section 701. *Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders .*

With respect to each series of the Securities, the Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee

(1) semi-annually, not later than 10 days after each Regular Record Date or in the case of any series of Securities on which semi-annual interest is not payable, not more than 15 days after such semi-annual dates specified by the Trustee, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of the Regular Record Date or such semi-annual date, as the case may be, and

---

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished;

*provided, that* so long as the Trustee is the Security Registrar, the Company shall not be required to furnish or cause to be furnished such a list to the Trustee. The Company shall otherwise comply with Section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

*Section 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders .*

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in **Section 701** and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in **Section 701** upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and privileges of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any agent of either of them shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders in accordance with this **Section 702**, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under this **Section 702**. The Company, the Trustee, the Security Registrar and any other Person shall have the protection of Section 312(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

*Section 703. Reports by Trustee .*

The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto, including Sections 313(a), 313(b), 313(c) and 313(d) of the Trust Indenture Act.

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will notify the Trustee in writing when any Securities are listed on any stock exchange or delisted therefrom.

*Section 704. Reports by Company .*

The Company shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; *provided* that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission. The Company shall otherwise comply with Section 314(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates). The Trustee shall not be obligated to monitor or confirm, on a continuing basis or otherwise, the Company's compliance with the covenants or with respect to any reports or other documents delivered under this Indenture. Further, the Trustee shall have liability or responsibility for the filing, timeliness or content of any report filed or delivered in connection herewith.

## ARTICLE EIGHT

### CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE

Section 801. *Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms* .

The Company shall not consolidate with or merge into any other Person or convey, transfer or lease its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person (other than a direct or indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company) and the Company shall not permit any Person (other than a direct or indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company) to consolidate with or merge into the Company, unless:

(1) the Company is the surviving corporation or, in case the Company shall consolidate with or merge into another Person or convey, transfer or lease its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person, the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer, or which leases, the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be a corporation, limited liability company, partnership or trust, organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and any premium and interest (including all additional amounts, if any payable pursuant to **Section 1007**) on all the Securities and the performance or observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness which becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of such transaction as having been incurred by the Company or such Subsidiary at the time of such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing;

(3) if, as a result of any such consolidation or merger or such conveyance, transfer or lease, properties or assets of the Company would become subject to a mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest or other encumbrance which would not be permitted by this Indenture, the Company or such successor Person, as the case may be, shall take such steps as shall be necessary effectively to secure the Securities equally and ratably with (or prior to) all indebtedness secured thereby; and

(4) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance, transfer or lease and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 802. *Successor Substituted* .

Upon any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, any other Person or any conveyance, transfer or lease of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with **Section 801** , the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance, transfer or lease is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

## ARTICLE NINE

### SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 901. *Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders* .

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or
- (3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); or

(4) to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture in respect of one or more series of Securities, *provided* that any such addition, change or elimination (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefit of such provision nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision or (B) shall become effective only when there is no such Security Outstanding; or

(5) to secure the Securities; or

(6) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by *Sections 201 and 301* ; or

(7) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of *Section 611* ; or

(8) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture, *provided* that such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate.

*Section 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders .*

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; *provided, however*, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby,

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or change any obligation of the Company to pay additional amounts pursuant to *Section 1007* (except as contemplated by *Sections 801 and 802* and permitted by *Section 901(1)* ), or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to *Section 502* , or change the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date), or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture, or

(3) change any obligation of the Company to maintain an office or agency in the places and for the purposes specified in **Section 1002**, or

(4) modify any of the provisions of this Section, **Section 513 or Section 1006**, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; *provided, however*, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section and **Section 901**, or deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of **Sections 611 and 901(7)**.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders of Securities under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

#### Section 903. *Execution of Supplemental Indentures* .

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to **Section 601**) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Officers’ Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture and that such supplemental indenture constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable against it in accordance with its terms. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee’s owner’s rights, duties, liabilities or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

#### Section 904. *Effect of Supplemental Indentures* .

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

Section 905. *Conformity with Trust Indenture Act* .

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 906. *Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures* .

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Company, bear a notation in form approved by the Company as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

## ARTICLE TEN

### COVENANTS

Section 1001. *Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest* .

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of Holders of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities and this Indenture. Principal, premium, if any, and interest shall be considered paid on the date due if the Trustee or the Paying Agent holds as of 11:00 a.m. Eastern time, on the due date money deposited by the Company in immediately available funds and designated for and sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest then due, and the Trustee or the Paying Agent, as the case may be, is not prohibited from paying such money to the Holders on that date pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

Section 1002. *Maintenance of Office or Agency* .

The Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of any such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency in respect of any series of Securities or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations and surrenders of Securities of that series may be made and notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the same as its agent to receive such respective presentations, surrenders, notices and demands; provided, however, no service of legal process may be made on the Company at any office of the Trustee. The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; *provided, however*, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.



---

Section 1003. *Money for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust* .

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium or interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent for any series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will (1) comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act applicable to it as a Paying Agent and (2) during the continuance of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of that series) in the making of any payment in respect of the Securities of that series, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent for payment in respect of the Securities of that series.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Subject to applicable unclaimed property or "escheat laws," any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal and any premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease.

Section 1004. *Statement by Officers as to Default* .

The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company ending after the date hereof, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signers thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which they may have knowledge. The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within 20 days after the Company becomes aware of the occurrence of any Event of Default or an event which, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute an Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate setting forth the details of such Event of Default or default.

Section 1005. *Existence* .

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its existence, rights (charter and statutory) and franchises; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if the Board of Directors shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the ability of the Company to make payments hereunder.

Section 1006. *Waiver of Certain Covenants* .

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for Securities of such series and as contemplated by **Section 508** , the Company may, with respect to the Securities of any series, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in this Indenture for the benefit of the Holders of such series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

Section 1007. *Additional Amounts* .

If the Securities of a series provide for the payment of additional amounts, the Company will pay to the Holder of any Security of such series additional amounts as provided therein. Whenever in this Indenture there is mentioned, in any context, the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on, or in respect of, any Security of any series or the net proceeds received on the sale or exchange of any Security of any series, such mention shall be deemed to include mention of the payment of additional amounts provided for in this Section to the extent that, in such context, additional amounts are, were or would be payable in respect thereof pursuant to the provisions of this Section and express mention of the payment of additional amounts (if applicable) in any provisions hereof shall not be construed as excluding additional amounts in those provisions hereof where such express mention is not made.

If the Securities of a series provide for the payment of additional amounts, at least 10 days prior to the first Interest Payment Date with respect to that series of Securities (or if the Securities of that series will not bear interest prior to Maturity, the first day on which a payment of principal and any premium is made), and at least 10 days prior to each date of payment of principal and any premium or interest if there has been any change with respect to the matters set forth in the below-mentioned Officers' Certificate, the Company will furnish the Trustee and the Company's principal Paying Agent or Paying Agents, if other than the Trustee, with an Officers' Certificate instructing the Trustee and such Paying Agent or Paying Agents whether such payment of principal of and any premium or interest on the Securities of that series shall be made to Holders of Securities of that series who are United States Aliens without withholding for or on account of any tax, assessment or other governmental charge described in the Securities of that series. If any such withholding shall be required, then such Officers' Certificate shall specify by country the amount, if any, required to be withheld on such payments to such Holders of Securities and the Company will pay to the Trustee or such Paying Agent the additional amounts required by this Section. The Company covenants to indemnify the Trustee and any Paying Agent for, to protect and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability, damage or expense reasonably incurred without negligence or willful misconduct on their part arising out of or in connection with actions taken or omitted by any of them in reliance on any Officers' Certificate furnished pursuant to this Section.

## ARTICLE ELEVEN

### REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

#### Section 1101. *Applicability of Article .*

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities) in accordance with this Article.

#### Section 1102. *Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee .*

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all the Securities of any series (including any such redemption affecting only a single Security), the Company shall, by delivering an Officers' Certificate at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date, of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed (unless all of the Securities of a specified tenor are to be redeemed). In the case of any redemption of Securities (i) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, or (ii) pursuant to an election of the Company which is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

Section 1103. *Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed* .

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed (unless all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed or unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, by such method in accordance with the Depository's applicable procedures and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of Securities of such series of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series or of the principal amount of global securities of such series. If less than all of the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series and specified tenor not previously called for redemption in accordance with the preceding sentence.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption as aforesaid and, in case of any Securities selected for partial redemption as aforesaid, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

The provisions of the two preceding paragraphs shall not apply with respect to any redemption affecting only a single Security, whether such Security is to be redeemed in whole or in part. In the case of any such redemption in part, the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of the Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed.

Section 1104. *Notice of Redemption* .

Notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided in **Section 106** to the Holders of Securities to be redeemed not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, except that notices of redemption may be sent more than 60 days prior to a redemption date if the notice is issued in connection with the defeasance or satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture.

All notices of redemption shall identify the Securities and state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price,

(3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of more than a single Security are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption of any such Securities, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed and, if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of a single Security are to be redeemed, the principal amount of the particular Security to be redeemed,

(4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date (unless the Company defaults in the timely deposit of the Redemption Price),

(5) the place or places where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price,

(6) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case, and

(7) applicable CUSIP number, ISIN or “Common Code” number, if any, and that no representation is made by the Trustee as to the correctness or accuracy of the CUSIP number, ISIN or “Common Code” number, if any, listed in such notice or printed on the Securities.

A notice of redemption published as contemplated by **Section 106** need not identify particular registered Securities to be redeemed.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company’s request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company and shall be irrevocable.

In case of any redemption at the election of the Company, the Company will, at least 10 days (unless a shorter notice will be satisfactory to the Trustee) prior to the notice date, notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date.

*Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price .*

Prior to 11:00 a.m. Eastern time on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in **Section 1003** ) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

*Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date .*

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall

be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest to the Redemption Date; *provided, however*, that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301**, installments of interests on Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of **Section 307**.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security.

Section 1107. *Securities Redeemed in Part*.

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

Section 1108. *Purchase of Securities*.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301**, the Company and any Affiliate of the Company may at any time purchase or otherwise acquire Securities in the open market or by private agreement. Such acquisition shall not operate as or be deemed for any purpose to be a redemption of the indebtedness represented by such Securities. Any Securities purchased or acquired by the Company may be delivered to the Trustee and, upon such delivery, the indebtedness represented thereby shall be deemed to be satisfied. **Section 309** shall apply to all Securities so delivered.

## ARTICLE TWELVE

### SINKING FUNDS

Section 1201. *Applicability of Article*.

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of any series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of any Securities is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment”, and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment”. If provided for by the terms of any Securities, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in **Section 1202**. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities as provided for by the terms of such Securities.

Section 1202. *Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities* .

The Company (1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption) and (2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as and to the extent provided for by the terms of such Securities; *provided* that the Securities to be so credited have not been previously so credited. The Securities to be so credited shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price, as specified in the Securities so to be redeemed, for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

Section 1203. *Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund* .

Not less than 45 days prior (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) to each sinking fund payment date for any Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for such Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities pursuant to **Section 1202** and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. The Trustee shall select any Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in **Section 1103** and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in **Section 1104** . Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in **Sections 1106 and 1107** .

## ARTICLE THIRTEEN

### LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

Section 1301. *Company 's Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance* .

The Company may at its option, at any time elect to have either **Section 1302** or **Section 1303** applied to the Outstanding Securities of any series upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this **Article Thirteen** .

Section 1302. *Legal Defeasance and Discharge* .

Upon the Company's exercise of the option provided in **Section 1301** applicable to this Section, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to the Outstanding Securities of any series on the date the conditions set forth below are satisfied (hereinafter, "**legal defeasance** "). For this purpose, such legal defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by the

Outstanding Securities of such series and to have satisfied all its other obligations under the Securities of such series and this Indenture insofar as the Securities of such series are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (A) the rights of Holders of the Securities of such series to receive, solely from the trust fund described in **Section 1304** and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of such series when such payments are due, (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under **Sections 304, 305, 306, 1002 and 1003**, (C) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and the Company's obligations related thereto and (D) this **Article Thirteen**. Subject to compliance with this Article Thirteen, the Company may exercise its option under this **Section 1302** notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under **Section 1303**.

**Section 1303. Covenant Defeasance.**

Upon the Company's exercise of the option provided in **Section 1301** applicable to this Section, (i) the Company shall be released from its obligations with respect to the Securities of such series under **Section 801, Section 1006** and **Section 1007** and any covenants provided pursuant to **Section 301** for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities (to the extent so provided pursuant to **Section 301**) and (ii) the occurrence of an event specified in **Sections 501(3) or (4)** shall not be deemed to be an Event of Default on and after the date the conditions set forth below are satisfied (hereinafter, "**covenant defeasance**"). For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such Section or clause whether directly or indirectly by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or clause or by reason of any reference in any such Section or clause to any other provision herein or in any other document, but the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

**Section 1304. Conditions to Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.**

The following shall be the conditions to application of either **Section 1302** or **Section 1303** to the then Outstanding Securities of any series:

(1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of **Section 609** who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article Thirteen applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, (A) money in an amount, or (B) Government Obligations which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants or a nationally recognized investment banking firm expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, (if such firms at such time customarily deliver such certifications, and, if not, such certification may be from



the principal financial officer of the Company), to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, the principal of, premium, if any, and each installment of interest on the Securities on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of interest in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of the Securities of such series. For this purpose, “ **Government Obligations** ” means, with respect to any series of Securities, securities that are (x) direct obligations of the government that issued the currency in which such series is denominated (or, if such series is denominated in euro, the direct obligations of any government that is a member of the European Monetary Union) for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (y) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of such government the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by such government, which, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any Government Obligation where the relevant government is the United States of America or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depository receipt, *provided* that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of such Government Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on such Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

(2) In the event of an election to have **Section 1302** apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (x) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (y) since the date of this Indenture there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of such series will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit, defeasance and discharge and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit, defeasance and discharge had not occurred.

(3) In the event of an election to have **Section 1303** apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of such series will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and covenant defeasance had not occurred.

(4) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, together stating that all conditions precedent provided for relating to either the legal defeasance under **Section 1302** or the covenant defeasance under **Section 1303** (as the case may be) have been complied with.

---

(5) Such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in the trust arising from such deposit constituting an investment company as defined in the Investment Company Act, or such trust shall be qualified under such act or exempt from regulation thereunder.

Section 1305. *Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions* .

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of **Section 1003** , all money and Government Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee (solely for purposes of this Section and **Section 1306** , the Trustee and any such other trustee are referred to collectively, for purposes of this **Section 1305** , as the “ *Trustee* ”) pursuant to **Section 1304** in respect of the Securities of such series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities of such series and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of the Securities of such series, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the Government Obligations deposited pursuant to **Section 1304** or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of the Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article Thirteen to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations held by it as provided in **Section 1304** which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants (or a nationally recognized investment banking firm or the principal financial officer of the Company, as appropriate) expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent legal defeasance or covenant defeasance.

Section 1306. *Reinstatement* .

If the Trustee or the Paying Agent is unable to apply any money in accordance with **Section 1302 or 1303** by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company’s obligations under this Indenture and the Securities of such series shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this **Article Thirteen** until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money in accordance with **Section 1302 or 1303** ; *provided, however*, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security following the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of the Securities of such series to receive such payment from the money held by the Trustee or the Paying Agent.

Section 1307. *Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust* .

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of **Section 1003** , all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to **Section 301** ) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee pursuant to **Section 1304** in respect of any Securities of any series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except as provided herein and except to the extent required by law.

## ARTICLE FOURTEEN

### MEETING OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

Section 1401. *Purposes for which Meetings may be Called* .

A meeting of Holders of Securities of any or all series of Securities may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series.

Section 1402. *Call, Notice and Place of Meetings* .

(a) The Trustee may at any time call a physical or telephonic meeting of Holders of Securities of any series for any purposes specified in **Section 1401** , to be held at any such time and at such place. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in **Section 106** , not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.

(b) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustee to call a physical or telephonic meeting of the Holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in **Section 1401** and have provided sufficient funds to cover the costs for the delivery of notice of such meeting, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as *provided* in subsection (a) of this Section.

Section 1403. *Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings* .

Upon the calling of a meeting of Holders with respect to the Securities of a series all or part of which are represented by a Security, a record date shall be established for determining Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series entitled to vote at such meeting, which record date shall be the close of business on the day the notice of the meeting of Holders is given in accordance with **Section 1402** . The Holders on such record date, and their designated proxies, and only such Persons, shall be entitled to vote at such meeting of Holders. To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders, a Person shall (a) be a Holder of one or more Securities or (b) be a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy by a Holder of one or more Securities; *provided, however*, that in the case of any meeting of Holders with respect to the Securities of a series all or part of which are represented by a Security, only Holders, or their designated proxies, of record on the record date established pursuant to **Section 1403** hereof shall be entitled to vote at such meeting. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel and any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

Section 1404. *Quorum; Action* .

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series; *provided, however*, that if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of not less than 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series, the Persons entitled to vote 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes of the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in **Section 1402(a)** , except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of an adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum.

Except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of **Section 902** , any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted by the affirmative vote of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; *provided, however*, that, except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of **Section 902** , any resolution with respect to any consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of not less than 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly convened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid only by the

affirmative vote of the Holders of 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; and *provided, further*, that, except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of **Section 902**, any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or any adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such series and the related coupons, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

Section 1405. *Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings*.

(a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of a series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in **Section 104** and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in **Section 104** or by having the signature of the person executing the proxy witnessed or guaranteed by any trust company, bank or banker authorized by **Section 104**. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in **Section 104** or other proof.

(b) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing, appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in **Section 1402(b)**, in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.

(c) At any meeting each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by him; *provided, however*, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or proxy.

---

(d) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly called pursuant to **Section 1402** at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting; and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

Section 1406. *Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings* .

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in **Section 1402** and, if applicable, **Section 1404** . Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company, and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

[ \_\_\_\_\_ ], Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**

**and**

[ \_\_\_\_\_ ]

**Trustee**

**INDENTURE**

**Dated as of**

---

**DEBT SECURITIES  
(Subordinated Debt)**



Carriage Services, Inc.

**Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939  
and Indenture dated as of**

---

<u>Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939</u>	<u>Section(s) of Indenture</u>
§ 310 (a)(1)	609
(a)(2)	609
(a)(3)	Not Applicable
(a)(4)	Not Applicable
(b)	608, 610
§ 311 (a)	613
(b)	613
(c)	Not Applicable
§ 312 (a)	701, 702
(b)	702
(c)	702
§ 313 (a)	703
(b)	703
(c)	703
(d)	703
§ 314 (a)	704, 105
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	102
(c)(2)	102
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	102
§ 315 (a)	601
(b)	602
(c)	601
(d)	601
(d)(1)	603
(d)(2)	603
(d)(3)	601
(e)	514
§ 316 (a)(1)(A)	512
(a)(1)(B)	513
(a)(2)	Not Applicable
(a)(last sentence)	101
(b)	508
§ 317 (a)(1)	503
(a)(2)	504
(b)	1003
§ 318 (a)	107

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS	1
Section 101. Definitions	1
Section 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions	8
Section 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	8
Section 104. Acts of Holders; Record Dates	9
Section 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company	11
Section 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver	11
Section 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	12
Section 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	12
Section 109. Successors and Assigns	12
Section 110. Separability Clause	12
Section 111. Benefits of Indenture	12
Section 112. Governing Law	12
Section 113. Legal Holidays	13
Section 114. Language of Notices, Etc.	13
Section 115. Submission to Jurisdiction	13
Section 116. Corporate Obligation	13
ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS	14
Section 201. Forms Generally	14
Section 202. Form of Legend for Global Securities	14
Section 203. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	14
Section 204. Securities in Global Form	15
ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES	16
Section 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable In Series	16
Section 302. Denominations	19
Section 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	19
Section 304. Temporary Securities	21
Section 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	22
Section 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	23
Section 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved	24
Section 308. Persons Deemed Owners	25
Section 309. Cancellation	25
Section 310. Computation of Interest	25
Section 311. CUSIP Numbers	25
ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	26
Section 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	26
Section 402. Application of Trust Money	27
ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES	27
Section 501. Events of Default	27

	<u>Page</u>
Section 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	28
Section 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	29
Section 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	30
Section 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	31
Section 506. Application of Money Collected	31
Section 507. Limitation on Suits	31
Section 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	32
Section 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies	32
Section 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative	32
Section 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver	32
Section 512. Control by Holders	33
Section 513. Waiver of Past Defaults	33
Section 514. Undertaking for Costs	33
Section 515. Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws	33
<b>ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE</b>	<b>34</b>
Section 601. Certain Duties and Responsibilities	34
Section 602. Notice of Defaults	35
Section 603. Certain Rights of Trustee	35
Section 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	37
Section 605. May Hold Securities	38
Section 606. Money Held in Trust	38
Section 607. Compensation and Reimbursement	38
Section 608. Conflicting Interests	39
Section 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	39
Section 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	39
Section 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	41
Section 612. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	42
Section 613. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	42
Section 614. Appointment of Authenticating Agent	42
<b>ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY</b>	<b>44</b>
Section 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	44
Section 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	44
Section 703. Reports by Trustee	45
Section 704. Reports by Company	45
<b>ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE</b>	<b>46</b>
Section 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	46
Section 802. Successor Substituted	47
<b>ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES</b>	<b>47</b>
Section 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	47
Section 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders	48

	<u>Page</u>
Section 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures	49
Section 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures	49
Section 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act	49
Section 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	49
<b>ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS</b>	<b>50</b>
Section 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest	50
Section 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency	50
Section 1003. Money for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust	50
Section 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default	51
Section 1005. Existence	52
Section 1006. Waiver of Certain Covenants	52
Section 1007. Additional Amounts	52
<b>ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>53</b>
Section 1101. Applicability of Article	53
Section 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	53
Section 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed	53
Section 1104. Notice of Redemption	54
Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price	55
Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date	55
Section 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part	56
Section 1108. Purchase of Securities	56
<b>ARTICLE TWELVE SINKING FUNDS</b>	<b>56</b>
Section 1201. Applicability of Article	56
Section 1202. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	56
Section 1203. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	57
<b>ARTICLE THIRTEEN LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE</b>	<b>57</b>
Section 1301. Company's Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	57
Section 1302. Legal Defeasance and Discharge	57
Section 1303. Covenant Defeasance	58
Section 1304. Conditions to Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	58
Section 1305. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions	60
Section 1306. Reinstatement	60
Section 1307. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust	61
<b>ARTICLE FOURTEEN SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>61</b>
Section 1401. Securities Subordinate to Senior Debt	61
Section 1402. Payment Over of Proceeds Upon Dissolution, Etc.	61
Section 1403. Default on Senior Debt	62
Section 1404. Acceleration of Securities	62
Section 1405. Payments to be held in Trust	62
Section 1406. Subrogation to Rights of Holders of Senior Debt	62

---

	<u>Page</u>
Section 1407. Provisions Solely to Define Relative Rights	63
Section 1408. Trustee to Effectuate Subordination	63
Section 1409. No Waiver of Subordination Provisions	63
Section 1410. Notice to Trustee	64
Section 1411. Reliance On Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent	65
Section 1412. Trustee Not Fiduciary for Holders of Senior Debt	65
Section 1413. Rights of Trustee As Holder of Senior Debt; Preservation of Trustee's Rights	65
Section 1414. Article Applicable to Paying Agents	65
Section 1415. Certain Conversions or Exchanges Deemed Payment	66
Section 1416. Defeasance of This Article Fourteen	66
ARTICLE FIFTEEN MEETING OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES	66
Section 1501. Purposes for which Meetings may be Called	66
Section 1502. Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	66
Section 1503. Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	67
Section 1504. Quorum; Action	67
Section 1505. Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	68
Section 1506. Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	69

INDENTURE, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_ between Carriage Services, Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (herein called the “ **Company** ”), having its principal office at 3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300, Houston, Texas 77056, and \_\_\_\_\_, National Association, a national banking association organized under the laws of the United States, as Trustee (herein called the “ **Trustee** ”).

## RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured, subordinated debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “ **Securities** ”), which may be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Persons (including the Company), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid and legally binding agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

## ARTICLE ONE

### DEFINITIONS

#### Section 101. *Definitions.*

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles; the term “ **generally accepted accounting principles** ” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted as consistently applied by the Company at the date of such computation;
- (4) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article”, a “Section” or an “Exhibit” refers to an Article, a Section or an Exhibit, as the case may be, of or to this Indenture; and

---

(5) the words “ *herein* ”, “ *hereof* ” and “ *hereunder* ” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used principally in *Article Six* and *Article Thirteen* , are defined in those Articles.

“ *Act* ”, when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in *Section 104* .

“ *Affiliate* ” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“ *Authenticating Agent* ” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to *Section 614* to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“ *Authorized Newspaper* ” means a newspaper, in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily published on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same city meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any Business Day.

“ *Board of Directors* ” means either the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of that board.

“ *Board Resolution* ” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“ *Business Day* ”, when used with respect to any Place of Payment, means each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday that is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“ *Commission* ” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument the United States Securities and Exchange Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“ **Company** ” means the Person named as the “ **Company** ” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “ **Company** ” shall mean such successor Person.

“ **Company Request** ” or “ **Company Order** ” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, Chairman of the Board, its Chief Executive Officer, or one of its executive Vice Presidents, and by its Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

“ **Corporate Trust Office** ” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business related to this Indenture shall be administered which as of the date hereof is located at \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Company.

“ **corporation** ” means a corporation, association, company, joint-stock company or business trust.

“ **covenant defeasance** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 1303** .

“ **Defaulted Interest** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 307** .

“ **Depository** ” means, with respect to Securities of any series issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as Depository for such Securities as contemplated by **Section 301** .

“ **Event of Default** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 501** .

“ **Exchange Act** ” means the United States Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“ **Expiration Date** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 104** .

“ **Global Security** ” means a Security that evidences all or part of the Securities of any series and bears the legend set forth in **Section 202** (or such legend as may be specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities).

“ **Government Obligation** ” has the meaning specified in **Section 1304** .

“ **Holder** ” means the Person in whose name the Security is registered in the Security Register.

“ **Indenture** ” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “ **Indenture** ” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by **Section 301** .



“**interest**”, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“**Interest Payment Date**”, when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“**Investment Company Act**” means the United States Investment Company Act of 1940 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“**Junior Securities**” has the meaning specified in **Section 1415**.

“**legal defeasance**” has the meaning specified in **Section 1302**.

“**Maturity**”, when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“**Notice of Default**” means a written notice of the kind specified in **Section 501(4)**.

“**Officers’ Certificate**” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer, or an executive Vice Presidents, and by the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee. One of the officers signing an Officers’ Certificate given pursuant to **Section 1004** shall be the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company.

“**Opinion of Counsel**” means a written opinion from legal counsel who is reasonably acceptable to the Trustee, who may be counsel for or an employee of the Company.

“**Original Issue Discount Security**” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to **Section 502**.

“**Outstanding**”, when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, *except* :

(1) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;

(2) Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities; *provided that*, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;

(3) Securities as to which legal defeasance has been effected pursuant to **Section 1302** ; and

(4) Securities that have been paid pursuant to **Section 1001** or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company; *provided, however* , that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver, or other action hereunder as of any date or whether a quorum is present at a meeting of Holders of Securities, (A) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof to such date pursuant to **Section 502** , (B) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Security is not determinable, the principal amount of such Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount as specified or determined as contemplated by **Section 301** , (C) the principal amount of a Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the U.S. dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner provided as contemplated by **Section 301** , of the principal amount of such Security (or, in the case of a Security described in clause (A) or (B) above, of the amount determined as provided in such clause), and (D) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver, or other action, or upon any such determination as to the presence of a quorum, only Securities that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

“ **Paying Agent** ” means any Person, which may include the Company, authorized by the Company to pay the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“ **Person** ” means any individual, corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“ **Place of Payment** ”, when used with respect to the Securities of any series, means the place or places specified in accordance with **Section 301** where the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series are payable.

“**Predecessor Security**” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under **Section 306** in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

“**Redemption Date**”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“**Redemption Price**”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“**Regular Record Date**” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Securities of any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by **Section 301**.

“**Responsible Officer**”, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any vice president, any assistant treasurer, any trust officer or assistant trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“**Securities**” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture *provided, however*, that if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, “Securities” with respect to the Indenture as to which such Person is Trustee shall have the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and shall more particularly mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

“**Securities Act**” means the United States Securities Act of 1933 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“**Security Register**” and “**Security Registrar**” have the respective meanings specified in **Section 305**.

“**Senior Debt**” means all amounts due on obligations in connection with any of the following, whether outstanding at the date of execution of this Indenture or thereafter incurred or created: (i) the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest due on the Company’s indebtedness for borrowed money and indebtedness evidenced by securities, debentures, bonds or other similar instruments issued by the Company (including all mandatory obligations under repurchase agreements for the payment of the repurchase price for the securities purchased pursuant thereto); (ii) any of the Company’s obligations as lessee under leases required to be capitalized on the balance sheet of the lessee under generally accepted accounting principles; (iii) all of the Company’s obligations for the reimbursement on any letter of credit, banker’s acceptance, security purchase facility or similar credit transaction; (iv) all of the Company’s

obligations in respect of interest rate swap, cap or other agreements, interest rate future or options contracts, currency swap agreements, currency future or option contracts and other similar agreements; (v) all obligations of the types referred to above of other Persons for the payment of which the Company is responsible or liable as obligor, guarantor or otherwise; and (vi) all obligations of the types referred to above of other Persons secured by any lien on any property or asset of the Company (whether or not such obligation is assumed by the Company); *provided however*, that the following will not constitute Senior Debt: (a) any indebtedness which expressly provides (i) that such indebtedness shall not be senior in right of payment to the Securities, or (ii) that such indebtedness shall be subordinated to any other indebtedness of the Company, unless such indebtedness expressly provides that such indebtedness shall be senior in right of payment to the Securities; (b) any indebtedness of the Company in respect of the Securities; (c) any indebtedness or liability for compensation to employees, for goods or materials purchased in the ordinary course of business or for services; (d) any indebtedness of the Company to any Subsidiary; and (e) any liability for federal, state, local or other taxes owed or owing by the Company.

“**Special Record Date**” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Company pursuant to **Section 307**.

“**Stated Maturity**”, when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“**Subsidiary**” means a corporation, limited liability company, limited partnership, or other entity more than 50% of the outstanding voting stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by the Company or by one or more other Subsidiaries, or by the Company and one or more other Subsidiaries. For the purposes of this definition, “**voting stock**” means the equity interest that ordinarily has voting power for the election of directors, managers, trustees, or general partners of an entity, or persons performing similar functions, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of equity interest has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

“**Trust Indenture Act**” means the United States Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; *provided, however*, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “**Trust Indenture Act**” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“**Trustee**” means the Person named as the “**Trustee**” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “**Trustee**” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “**Trustee**” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“ **United States Alien** ” means any Person who, for United States Federal income tax purposes, is a foreign corporation, a non-resident alien individual, a non-resident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust, or a foreign partnership one or more of the members of which is, for United States Federal income tax purposes, a foreign corporation, a non-resident alien individual or a non-resident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust.

“ **Vice President** ”, when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “ **vice president** ”.

Section 102. *Compliance Certificates and Opinions.*

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee such certificates and opinions stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with. Each such certificate or opinion shall be given in the form of an Officers’ Certificate, if to be given by an officer of the Company, or an Opinion of Counsel, if to be given by counsel, and shall comply with the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act and any other requirements set forth in this Indenture.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (except for certificates provided for in **Section 1004** ) shall include,

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and
- (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 103. *Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.*

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is

based are erroneous. Any such certificate or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 104. *Acts of Holders; Record Dates.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by agent duly appointed in writing. Except as herein otherwise expressly *provided*, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the “*Act*” of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments, and shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to **Section 601**) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustee deems sufficient.

The principal amount and serial numbers of Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, shall be proved by the Security Register.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

The Company may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to give, make or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders of Securities of such series, *provided, that* the Company may not set a record date for, and the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to, the giving or making of any notice, declaration, request or direction

referred to in the next paragraph. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to take the relevant action, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; *provided, that* no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Company from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Company, at its own expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Trustee in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**.

The Trustee may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to join in the giving or making of (i) any Notice of Default, (ii) any declaration of acceleration referred to in **Section 502**, (iii) any request to institute proceedings referred to in **Section 507(2)** or (iv) any direction referred to in **Section 512**, in each case with respect to Securities of such series. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; *provided, that* no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Trustee from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Trustee, at the Company's expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Company in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**.

With respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto that sets such record date may designate any day as the "**Expiration Date**" and from time to time may change the Expiration Date to any earlier or later day; *provided that* no such change shall be effective unless notice of the proposed new Expiration Date is given to the other party hereto in writing, and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**, on or prior to the existing Expiration Date. If an Expiration Date is not designated with respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto that set such record date shall be deemed to have initially designated the 180th day after such record date as the Expiration Date with respect thereto, subject to its right to change the Expiration Date as provided in this paragraph.

Without limiting the foregoing, a Holder entitled hereunder to take any action hereunder with regard to any particular Security may do so with regard to all or any part of the principal amount of such Security or by one or more duly appointed agents each of which may do so pursuant to such appointment with regard to all or any part of such principal amount.

Section 105. *Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing (which may be via facsimile) to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

Section 106. *Notice to Holders; Waiver.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, where this Indenture provides for notice of any event to Holders of Securities, such notice shall be sufficiently given to Holders of Securities if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder of a Security affected by such event, at the address of such Holder as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice to Holders of Securities by mail, then such notification as shall be made in a manner directed by the Company or as provided in a supplemental indenture hereto shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder. In any case where notice to Holders of Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder of a Security shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders.

Where this Indenture provides for notice of any event (including any notice of redemption) to any Holder of a Global Security (whether by mail or otherwise), such notice shall be sufficiently given if given to the Depository for such Security (or its designee), according to the applicable procedures of the Depository, if any, prescribed for the giving of such notice.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders of Securities shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.



Section 107. *Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.*

This Indenture shall incorporate and be governed by the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are required to be part of and to govern indentures qualified under the Trust Indenture Act. If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act that is required under such Act to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the latter provision shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act that may be so modified or excluded, the former provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

Section 108. *Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.*

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 109. *Successors and Assigns.*

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 110. *Separability Clause.*

In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 111. *Benefits of Indenture.*

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, the holders of Senior Debt and the Holders of Securities, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 112. *Governing Law; Waiver of Jury Trial.*

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York. THE COMPANY, THE TRUSTEE, AND EACH HOLDER HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE, THE SECURITIES OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

Section 113. *Legal Holidays.*

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or Stated Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of the Securities (other than a provision of any Security which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section)) payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date or Redemption Date, or at the Stated Maturity; provided, however, that no interest will accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or Stated Maturity, as the case may be, to such Business Day if such payment is made on such Business Day.

Section 114. *Language of Notices, Etc.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Section 115. *Submission to Jurisdiction.*

The Company irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any federal or state court in the City, County and State of New York, United States, and any appellate court from any thereof, in any legal suit, action or proceeding based on or arising under the Securities or this Indenture and agrees that all claims in respect of such suit or proceeding may be determined in any such court. The Company irrevocably waives to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection to any such suit, including actions, suits or proceedings relating to the securities laws of the United States of America or any state thereof, in such courts whether on the grounds of venue, residence or domicile or the defense of an inconvenient forum or objections to personal jurisdiction with respect to the maintenance of such legal suit, action or proceeding. The Company agrees that the final judgment in any such suit, action or proceeding brought in such court shall be conclusive and binding upon the Company and may be enforced in any court to the jurisdiction of which the Company is subject by a suit upon such judgment.

Section 116. *Corporate Obligation.*

No recourse may be taken, directly or indirectly, against any incorporator, subscriber to the capital stock, stockholder, officer, director or employee of the Company or the Trustee or of any predecessor or successor of the Company or the Trustee with respect to the Company's obligations on the Securities or the obligations of the Company or the Trustee under this Indenture or any certificate or other writing delivered in connection herewith.

Section 117 Patriot Act. The parties hereto acknowledge that in accordance with Section 326 of the U.S.A. PATRIOT Act, the Trustee is required to obtain, verify, and record information that identifies each person or legal entity that establishes a relationship or opens an account with the Trustee. The parties to this Indenture agree that they will provide the Trustee with such information as it may request in order for the Trustee to satisfy the requirements of the U.S.A. PATRIOT Act.

---

**ARTICLE TWO**

**SECURITY FORMS**

Section 201. *Forms Generally*.

The Securities of each series shall be in substantially the form of forms as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or Depositary therefor or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities as evidenced by their execution thereof. If the form of Securities of any series is established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by **Section 303** for the authentication and delivery of such Securities (or any such temporary global Security).

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

Section 202. *Form of Legend for Global Securities*.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for the Securities evidenced thereby, every Global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

Section 203. *Form of Trustee 's Certificate of Authentication*.

The Trustee's certificates of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

“This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_

---

As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
*Authorized Signatory*

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_”

Section 204. *Securities in Global Form.*

If Securities of or within a series are issuable in global form, as specified as contemplated by **Section 301**, then any such Security shall represent such of the Outstanding Securities of such series as shall be specified therein and may provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities represented thereby may from time to time be reduced to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of a Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made by the Trustee in such manner and upon instructions given by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or in the Company Order to be delivered to the Trustee pursuant to **Section 303** or **Section 304**. Subject to the provisions of **Section 303** and, if applicable, **Section 304**, the Trustee shall deliver and redeliver any Security in permanent global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to **Section 303** or **Section 304** has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to endorsement or delivery or redelivery of a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not comply with **Section 102** and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel.

The provisions of the last sentence of **Section 303** shall apply to any Security represented by a Security in global form if such Security was never issued and sold by the Company and the Company delivers to the Trustee the Security in global form together with written instructions (which need not comply with **Section 102** and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) with regard to the reduction in the principal amount of Securities represented thereby, together with the written statement contemplated by the last sentence of **Section 303**.

Notwithstanding the provisions of **Section 307**, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301**, payment of principal of and any premium and interest on any Security in permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

---

## ARTICLE THREE

### THE SECURITIES

#### Section 301. *Amount Unlimited; Issuable In Series.*

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and, subject to **Section 303**, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series,

- (1) the title of the Securities of the series, including CUSIP numbers, if applicable (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from Securities of any other series);
- (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to **Section 304, 305, 306, 906** or **1107** and except for any Securities which, pursuant to **Section 303**, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);
- (3) the Trustees, Authenticating Agents, Paying Agents, Security Registrars or other agents with respect to the series;
- (4) the Person to whom any interest on any Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid if other than in the manner provided in **Section 304**;
- (5) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable;
- (6) the ability to issue additional Securities in the same series;
- (7) the price or prices at which the Securities will be sold;
- (8) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of any such deferral period, including the maximum consecutive period during which interest payment periods may be extended;
- (9) provisions, if any, granting special rights to holders of the Securities upon the occurrence of specified events;
- (10) the terms, if any, upon which Holders may convert or exchange (or upon which the Company may require Holders to convert or exchange) the Securities of the series into or for the common stock, preferred stock or other securities or property of the Company or of another Person (or upon which the Securities of the series shall automatically convert or be exchanged into or for such other securities or property).

---

(11) the specific subordination provisions applicable to the Securities, if other than as set forth in **Article Fourteen** herein;

(12) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, which may be fixed or variable, or the method by which such rate shall be determined, the date or dates from which any such interest shall accrue, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable, and the Regular Record Date for the interest payable on any Securities on any Interest Payment Date;

(13) in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities, the rate of accretion of principal, which may be fixed or variable, or the method of determining such rate, and the date or dates from which principal will accrete or the method by which such date or dates will be determined;

(14) the place or places where, subject to the provisions of **Section 1002**, the principal of and any premium, if any, and interest, if any, on Securities of the series shall be payable, where any Securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, where Securities of the series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of the series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of the series and this Indenture may be served;

(15) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part at the option of the Company (including whether the redemption may be made conditional upon events occurring after the delivery or publication of the notice of redemption) and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to redeem the Securities shall be evidenced;

(16) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase any Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of the Holders thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series shall be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(17) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which any Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(18) whether the amount of payments of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which index, formula or method may be based, without limitation, on one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices), and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(19) the currency or currencies, including currency units or composite currencies, in which payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable if other than the currency of the United States of America and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for purposes of the definition of “**Outstanding**” in **Section 101**;

(20) if the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series is to be payable, at the election of the Company or the Holder thereof, in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are stated to be payable, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on such Securities as to which such election is made shall be payable, the periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amount so payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined);

(21) if other than the entire principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to **Section 502**;

(22) the collateral, if any, securing the Securities of the series, and the guarantors, if any, who will guarantee the Securities of the series, or the methods of determining such collateral, if any, and such guarantors, if any;

(23) whether the amount of principal, premium, if any, and interest on the Securities of the series may be determined by reference to an index, formula or other method, such as one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices, and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(24) if the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of any Securities of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the Stated Maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such Securities as of any such date for any purpose thereunder or hereunder, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any Maturity other than the Stated Maturity or which shall be deemed to be Outstanding as of any date prior to the Stated Maturity (or, in any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined);

(25) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or any specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to **Section 1302** or **Section 1303** or both such Sections and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced;

(26) if applicable, that any Securities of the series shall be issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and, in such case, the respective Depositaries for such Global Securities, the form of any legend or legends which shall be borne by any such Global Security in addition to or in lieu of that set forth in **Section 202** and any circumstances in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in the legend set forth in **Section 202** in which any such Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and any transfer of such Global Security in whole or in part may be registered in the name or names of Persons other than the Depositary for such Global Security or a nominee thereof;

(27) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which apply to any Securities of the series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to **Section 502**;

(28) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in **Article Ten** which applies to Securities of the series, including any limitation on the Company's ability to incur debt, redeem stock or sell its assets;

(29) whether, under what circumstances and the currency in which the Company will pay additional amounts as contemplated by **Section 1007** on the Securities of the series to any Holder who is not a United States Person(s) (including any modification to the definition of such term) in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether the Company will have the option to redeem such Securities rather than pay such additional amounts (and the terms of any such option);

(30) provisions, if any, granting special rights to holders of Securities of the series upon the occurrence of specified events; and

(31) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by **Section 901** or **902** ), including the stated intervals of time the Trustee shall be required to transmit reports pursuant to Section 313(a) of the Act.

All Securities of such series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture referred to above and (subject to **Section 303** ) set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

The Securities shall be subordinated in right of payment to Senior Debt as provided in **Article Fourteen** .

**Section 302. Denominations.**

Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by **Section 301** with respect to the Securities of any series, any Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

**Section 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.**

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, its Chief Executive Officer, or one of its executive Vice Presidents, attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.



---

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, an Officer's Certificate, and an Opinion of Counsel, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If the forms or terms of the Securities of the series have been established by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions as permitted by **Sections 201** and **301**, in authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to **Section 601**) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating,

(1) if the forms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by **Section 201**, that such forms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;

(2) if the terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by **Section 301**, that such terms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and

(3) that such Securities when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general principles of equity.

If the authentication and delivery relates to a new series of Securities created by an indenture supplemental hereto, such Opinion of Counsel shall also state that all conditions precedent to the execution of the supplemental indenture with respect to that series of Securities have been complied with, the Company has the power to execute and deliver such supplemental indenture and has taken all necessary action for those purposes and any such supplemental indenture has been executed and delivered and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles. The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties, liabilities or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

---

Notwithstanding the provisions of **Section 301** and of the two preceding paragraphs, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to **Section 301** or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to such preceding paragraphs at or prior to the authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in **Section 309**, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

*Section 304. Temporary Securities.*

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of that series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor one or more definitive Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and like aggregate principal amount and tenor.

Until exchanged in full as hereinafter provided, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 305. *Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.*

The Company shall cause to be kept at an office or agency to be maintained by the Company in accordance with **Section 1002** a register (being the combined register of the Security Registrar and all transfer agents designated pursuant to **Section 1002** for the purpose of registration of transfer of Securities and sometimes collectively referred to as the “**Security Register**”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities and the registration of transfers of Securities. The Trustee is hereby appointed “Security Registrar” for the purpose of registering Securities and transfers of Securities as herein provided.

Except as otherwise provided in **Section 203**, or as may be provided as contemplated by **Section 301**, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of a series at the office or agency of the Company maintained pursuant to **Section 1002** for such purpose in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

At the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee or any transfer agent) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar or any transfer agent duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to **Section 304, 906** or **1107** not involving any transfer.

If the Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, the Company shall not be required to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities of that series to be redeemed and ending at the close of business on the day of the delivery of the relevant notice of redemption.

---

The transferor shall also provide or cause to be provided to the Trustee all information necessary to allow the Trustee to comply with any applicable tax reporting obligations, including without limitation, any cost basis reporting obligations under Section 6045 of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). The Trustee may rely on any such information provided to it and shall have no responsibility to verify or ensure the accuracy of such information.

Section 306. *Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.*

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the previous two paragraphs, in case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 307. *Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.*

Except as otherwise provided as contemplated by **Section 301** with respect to any series of Securities, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called “**Defaulted Interest**”) after any applicable grace period shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in *clause (1)* or *(2)* below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date (a “**Special Record Date**”) for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this Clause provided. Thereupon the Company shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Company shall promptly notify the Trustee of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, the Trustee shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given to each Holder of Securities of such series in the manner set forth in **Section 106**, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so sent, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following *Clause (2)*.

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this Clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and **Section 305**, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

Section 308. *Persons Deemed Owners.*

Prior to due presentment of a Security at maturity, redemption or for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and any premium and (subject to **Section 305** and **Section 307**) any interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

Section 309. *Cancellation.*

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of in the Trustee's customary manner.

Section 310. *Computation of Interest.*

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for Securities of any series, interest on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

Section 311. *CUSIP Numbers.*

The Company in issuing the Securities may use "**CUSIP**" numbers, ISINs and "**Common Code**" numbers (in each case if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use such "**CUSIP**" numbers, ISINs and "**Common Code**" numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company will notify the Trustee in writing of any change in "**CUSIP**" numbers, ISINs or "**Common Code**" numbers.

---

**ARTICLE FOUR**

**SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE**

Section 401. *Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.*

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities herein expressly provided for, and any right to receive additional amounts, as provided in **Section 1007** ), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when

(1) either

(A) all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than Securities which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in **Section 306** and Securities for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in **Section 1003** ) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation:

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose money in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under **Section 607** , the obligations of the Company to any Authenticating Agent under **Section 614** and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to *subclause (B) of clause (1)* of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under **Section 402** and the last paragraph of **Section 1003** shall survive such satisfaction and discharge.

Section 402. *Application of Trust Money.*

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of *Section 1003*, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to *Section 401* shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and any premium and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee.

**ARTICLE FIVE**

**REMEDIES**

Section 501. *Events of Default.*

“*Event of Default*”, wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be occasioned by the provisions of *Article Fourteen* or be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

- (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or,
- (2) default in the payment of the principal of or any premium on any Security of that series at its Maturity and (if so established as contemplated by *Section 301* in respect of that series), in the case of technical or administrative difficulties only if such default persists for a period of five days; or
- (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of a Security of that series; or
- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “*Notice of Default*” hereunder; or



(5) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company a bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company under any applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or

(6) the commencement by the Company of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, of the consent by it to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due; or

(7) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

Section 502. *Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.*

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default specified in **Section 501(5)** or **501(6)**) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may declare the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in **Section 501(5)** or **501(6)** with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) shall automatically, and without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay

(A) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel,

(B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and any interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,

(C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and

(D) all overdue interest on all Securities of that series;

and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that series which has become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in **Section 513** .

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

*Section 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.*

The Company covenants that if

(1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or

(2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof,

the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal and premium and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances, of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

---

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem reasonably necessary to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 504. *Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.*

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal (or lesser amount in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal (and premium, if any) or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

(i) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or lesser amount in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) (and premium, if any) and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and

(ii) to collect and receive any monies or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same;

and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under **Section 607**.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceedings; *provided, however*, that the Trustee may, on behalf of the Holders, vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and be a member of a creditors' or other similar committee.

Section 505. *Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.*

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 506. *Application of Money Collected.*

Any money or property collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money or property on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due hereunder to the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder);

SECOND: Subject to *Article Fourteen*, to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively; and

THIRD: To the Company.

Section 507. *Limitation on Suits.*

Subject to *Section 508*, no Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

- (1) an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing and such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee an indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

---

(5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

*Section 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.*

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to **Sections 305** and **307**) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

*Section 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies.*

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder; then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

*Section 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative.*

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of **Section 306**, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

*Section 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver.*

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

Section 512. *Control by Holders.*

Subject to **Section 603(5)**, with respect to the Securities of any series, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, provided that

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture, and
- (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

Section 513. *Waiver of Past Defaults.*

The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default

- (1) in the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of such series, or
- (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under **Article Nine** cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 514. *Undertaking for Costs.*

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed that in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in the Trust Indenture Act; *provided that* neither this Section nor the Trust Indenture Act shall be deemed to authorize any court to require such an undertaking or to make such an assessment in any suit instituted by the Company or the Trustee.

Section 515. *Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws.*

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force,

which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

## ARTICLE SIX

### THE TRUSTEE

#### Section 601. *Certain Duties and Responsibilities.*

The duties and responsibilities of the Trustee shall be as provided in this Indenture and by the Trust Indenture Act.

(a) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series of which a Responsible Officer of the Indenture Trustee has actual knowledge,

(i) the Trustee undertakes to perform, with respect to Securities of such series, such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may, with respect to Securities of such series, conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture.

(b) If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise, with respect to Securities of such series, such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that

(1) this subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of sub-section (a) of this Section;

(2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any one or more series, as provided herein, relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(4) no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers.

(d) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

*Section 602. Notice of Defaults.*

If a default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series that is actually known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act. The Trustee may withhold from the Holders notice of any continuing default, except a Default relating to the payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, if it withholding such notice would be in the interest of Holders. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default" means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

*Section 603. Certain Rights of Trustee.*

Subject to the provisions of **Section 601** :

(1) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document (whether in its original or facsimile form) believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order, and any resolution of the Board of Directors shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on its part, conclusively rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(4) the Trustee may consult with counsel of its own selection and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;



(5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;

(6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;

(7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(8) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered, or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and reasonably believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(9) the Trustee shall not be deemed to have, or required to take, notice of any default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture and specifies that such notice is a notice of an Event of Default;

(10) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and the Person employed to act hereunder;

(11) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officers' Certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded;

(12) the permissive rights of the Trustee enumerated herein shall not be construed as duties;

(13) in no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect, or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;

(14) the Trustee shall not be required to give any bond or surety in respect of the execution of the trusts and powers or otherwise in respect of this indenture;

(15) under no circumstances shall the Trustee be liable in its individual capacity for the obligations evidenced by the securities;

(16) the Trustee shall not be liable or responsible for any action or inaction of the Depository or any other clearinghouse or depository;

(17) the Trustee shall have no obligation to undertake any calculation hereunder or have any liability for any calculation performed in connection herewith or the transactions contemplated hereunder;

(18) the Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture arising out of or caused, directly or indirectly, by circumstances beyond its control, including acts of God; earthquakes; fire; flood; terrorism; wars and other military disturbances; sabotage; epidemics; riots; interruptions; loss or malfunctions of utilities, computer (hardware or software) or communication services; accidents; labor disputes; acts of civil or military authority and governmental action; and

(19) for certain payments made pursuant to this Indenture, the Trustee may be required to make a “reportable payment” or “withholdable payment” and in such cases the Trustee shall have the duty to act as a payor or withholding agent, respectively, that is responsible for any tax withholding and reporting required under Chapters 3, 4 and 61 of the Code. The Trustee shall have the sole right to make the determination as to which payments are “reportable payments” or “withholdable payments.” All parties to this Indenture shall provide an executed IRS Form W-9 or appropriate IRS Form W-8 (or, in each case, any successor form) to the Trustee prior to closing, and shall promptly update any such form to the extent such form becomes obsolete or inaccurate in any respect. The Trustee shall have the right to request from any party to this Indenture, or any other Person entitled to payment hereunder, any additional forms, documentation or other information as may be reasonably necessary for the Trustee to satisfy its reporting and withholding obligations under the Code. To the extent any such forms to be delivered under this Section 603 are not provided prior to or by the time the related payment is required to be made or are determined by the Trustee to be incomplete and/or inaccurate in any respect, the Trustee shall be entitled to withhold on any such payments hereunder to the extent withholding is required under Chapters 3, 4 or 61 of the Code, and shall have no obligation to gross up any such payment.

*Section 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.*

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee’s certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

Section 605. *May Hold Securities.*

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to **Sections 608** and **613**, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

Section 606. *Money Held in Trust.*

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest or investment on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

Section 607. *Compensation and Reimbursement.*

The Company agrees

(1) to pay to the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder) from time to time such compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder as shall be agreed in writing between the Company and the Trustee (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

(2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder) in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as shall be determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to have been caused by its own negligence or willful misconduct; and

(3) to indemnify the Trustee (acting in any capacity hereunder) and any predecessor Trustee for, to protect and to hold it harmless against, any and all loss, liability, claim, damage or expense, including taxes (other than those based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee), incurred without negligence or willful misconduct on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim (whether asserted by the Company, any Holder or any other Person) or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder or in connection with enforcing the provisions of this Section.

This Section shall survive the termination of the Indenture and the resignation or removal of the Trustee.

---

To secure the payment obligations of the Company in this Section 607, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities on all money or property held or collected by the Trustee, except that held in trust to pay principal and interest on any particular Securities. Such lien shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture.

Section 608. *Conflicting Interests.*

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture. To the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest by virtue of being a trustee under this Indenture with respect to Securities of more than one series.

Section 609. *Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.*

There shall at all times be one (and only one) Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of each series, which may be Trustee hereunder for Securities of one or more other series. Each Trustee shall be a Person that is eligible pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act to act as such and has a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If any such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section and to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

Section 610. *Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.*

No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of **Section 611**.

The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by **Section 611** shall not have been delivered to the resigning Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction at the expense of the Company for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Trustee may be removed upon 30 days prior written notice with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

If at any time:

---

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with **Section 608** after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under **Section 609** and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Holder, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, (A) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (B) subject to **Section 514**, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of removal, the Trustee being removed may petition, at the expense of the Company, any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of **Section 611**. If, within one year after the successor trustee takes office, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of **Section 611**, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series and accepted appointment in the manner required by **Section 611**, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to all Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided in **Section 106**. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

---

Notwithstanding replacement of the Trustee pursuant to this Section 610, the Company's obligations under Section 607 shall continue for the benefit of the retiring Trustee.

Section 611. *Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.*

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates.

Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in the first or second preceding paragraph, as the case may be.

No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

Section 612. *Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.*

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

Section 613. *Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.*

If and when the Trustee shall be or become a creditor of the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities), the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of **Section 311** of the Trust Indenture Act, but only to the extent therein specified, regarding the collection of claims against the Company (or any such other obligor). For purposes of **Section 311(b)(4)** and **(6)** of such Act, the following terms shall mean:

(a) “ **cash transaction** ” means any transaction in which full payment for goods or securities sold is made within seven days after delivery of the goods or securities in currency or in checks or other orders drawn upon banks or bankers and payable upon demand; and

(b) “ **self-liquidating paper** ” means any draft, bill of exchange, acceptance or obligation which is made, drawn, negotiated or incurred by the Company for the purpose of financing the purchase, processing, manufacturing, shipment, storage or sale of goods, wares or merchandise and which is secured by documents evidencing title to, possession of, or a lien upon, the goods, wares or merchandise or the receivables or proceeds arising from the sale of the goods, wares or merchandise previously constituting the security, provided the security is received by the Trustee simultaneously with the creation of the creditor relationship with the Company arising from the making, drawing, negotiating or incurring of the draft, bill of exchange, acceptance or obligation.

Section 614. *Appointment of Authenticating Agent.*

The Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue and upon exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to **Section 306**, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Any such appointment shall be evidenced by an instrument in writing signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, and a copy of such instrument shall be promptly furnished to the Company. Wherever reference is made in

this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give notice of such appointment in the manner provided in **Section 106** to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternative certificate of authentication in the following form:

"This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.



\_\_\_\_\_,  
As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
*As Authenticating Agent*

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
*Authorized Officer*

If all of the Securities of a series may not be originally issued at one time, and if the Trustee does not have an office capable of authenticating Securities upon original issuance located in a Place of Payment where the Company wishes to have Securities of such series authenticated upon original issuance, the Trustee, if so requested by the Company in writing (which writing need not comply with **Section 102** and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel), shall appoint in accordance with this Section an Authenticating Agent having an office in a Place of Payment designated by the Company with respect to such series of Securities.

## ARTICLE SEVEN

### HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

#### Section 701. *Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.*

With respect to each series of the Securities, the Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee

(1) semi-annually, not later than 10 days after each Regular Record Date or in the case of any series of Securities on which semi-annual interest is not payable, not more than 15 days after such semi-annual dates specified by the Trustee, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of the Regular Record Date or such semi-annual date, as the case may be, and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished;

*provided, that* so long as the Trustee is the Security Registrar, the Company shall not be required to furnish or cause to be furnished such a list to the Trustee. The Company shall otherwise comply with Section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

#### Section 702. *Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.*

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in **Section 701** and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in **Section 701** upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

---

The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and privileges of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any agent of either of them shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders in accordance with this **Section 702**, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under this **Section 702**. The Company, the Trustee, the Security Registrar and any other Person shall have the protection of **Section 312(c)** of the Trust Indenture Act.

**Section 703. Reports by Trustee.**

The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto, including **Sections 313(a), 313(b), 313(c)** and **313(d)** of the Trust Indenture Act.

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will notify the Trustee in writing when any Securities are listed on any stock exchange or delisted therefrom.

**Section 704. Reports by Company.**

The Company shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; *provided that* any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to **Section 13** or **15(d)** of the Exchange Act shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission. The Company shall otherwise comply with **Section 314(a)** of the Trust Indenture Act.

Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates). The Trustee shall not be obligated to monitor or confirm, on a continuing basis or otherwise, the Company's compliance with the covenants or with respect to any reports or other documents delivered under this Indenture. Further, the Trustee shall have liability or responsibility for the filing, timeliness or content of any report filed or delivered in connection herewith.

---

**ARTICLE EIGHT**

**CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE**

Section 801. *Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.*

The Company shall not consolidate with or merge into any other Person or convey, transfer or lease its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person (other than a direct or indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company), and the Company shall not permit any Person (other than a direct or indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company) to consolidate with or merge into the Company, unless:

(1) the Company is the surviving corporation or, in case the Company shall consolidate with or merge into another Person or convey, transfer or lease its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person, the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer, or which leases, the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be a corporation, limited liability company, partnership or trust, organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and any premium and interest (including all additional amounts, if any payable pursuant to **Section 1007**) on all the Securities and the performance or observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness which becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of such transaction as having been incurred by the Company or such Subsidiary at the time of such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing;

(3) if, as a result of any such consolidation or merger or such conveyance, transfer or lease, properties or assets of the Company would become subject to a mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest or other encumbrance which would not be permitted by this Indenture, the Company or such successor Person, as the case may be, shall take such steps as shall be necessary effectively to secure the Securities equally and ratably with (or prior to) all indebtedness secured thereby; and

(4) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance, transfer or lease and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 802. *Successor Substituted.*

Upon any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, any other Person or any conveyance, transfer or lease of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with **Section 801**, the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance, transfer or lease is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

**ARTICLE NINE**

**SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES**

Section 901. *Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.*

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or
- (3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); or
- (4) to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture in respect of one or more series of Securities, *provided that* any such addition, change or elimination (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefit of such provision nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision or (B) shall become effective only when there is no such Security Outstanding; or
- (5) to secure the Securities; or
- (6) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by **Sections 201** and **301**; or
- (7) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of **Section 611**; or

(8) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture, *provided that* such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate.

Section 902. *Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders.*

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; *provided, however*, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby,

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or change any obligation of the Company to pay additional amounts pursuant to **Section 1007** (except as contemplated by **Sections 801** and **802** and permitted by **Section 901(1)**), or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to **Section 502**, or change the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date), or modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to the subordination of the Securities in a manner adverse to the Holders, or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture, or

(3) change any obligation of the Company to maintain an office or agency in the places and for the purposes specified in **Section 1002**, or

(4) modify any of the provisions of this Section, **Section 513** or **Section 1006**, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; *provided, however*, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to "**the Trustee**" and concomitant changes in this Section and **Section 901**, or deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of **Sections 611** and **901(7)**.

---

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders of Securities under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

*Section 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures.*

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to *Section 601*) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture and that such supplemental indenture constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable against it in accordance with its terms. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's owner's rights, duties, liabilities or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

*Section 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures.*

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

*Section 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.*

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act.

*Section 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.*

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Company, bear a notation in form approved by the Company as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

---

## ARTICLE TEN

### COVENANTS

#### Section 1001. *Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.*

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of Holders of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities and this Indenture. Principal, premium, if any, and interest shall be considered paid on the date due if the Trustee or the Paying Agent holds as of 11:00 a.m. Eastern time, on the due date money deposited by the Company in immediately available funds and designated for and sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest then due, and the Trustee or the Paying Agent, as the case may be, is not prohibited from paying such money to the Holders on that date pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

#### Section 1002. *Maintenance of Office or Agency.*

The Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of any such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency in respect of any series of Securities or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations and surrenders of Securities of that series may be made and notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the same as its agent to receive such respective presentations, surrenders, notices and demands; provided, however, no service of legal process may be made on the Company at any office of the Trustee. The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; *provided, however*, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

#### Section 1003. *Money for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust.*

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium or interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

---

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent for any series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will (1) comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act applicable to it as a Paying Agent and (2) during the continuance of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of that series) in the making of any payment in respect of the Securities of that series, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent for payment in respect of the Securities of that series.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Subject to applicable unclaimed property or “escheat laws,” any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal and any premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease.

*Section 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default.*

The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company ending after the date hereof, an Officers’ Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signers thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which they may have knowledge. The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within 20 days after the Company becomes aware of the occurrence of any Event of Default or an event which, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute an Event of Default, an Officers’ Certificate setting forth the details of such Event of Default or default.



Section 1005. *Existence.*

Subject to **Article Eight**, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its existence, rights (charter and statutory) and franchises; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if the Board of Directors shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the ability of the Company to make payments hereunder.

Section 1006. *Waiver of Certain Covenants.*

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for Securities of such series and as contemplated by **Section 508**, the Company may, with respect to the Securities of any series, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in this Indenture for the benefit of the Holders of such series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

Section 1007. *Additional Amounts.*

If the Securities of a series provide for the payment of additional amounts, the Company will pay to the Holder of any Security of such series additional amounts as provided therein. Whenever in this Indenture there is mentioned, in any context, the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on, or in respect of, any Security of any series or the net proceeds received on the sale or exchange of any Security of any series, such mention shall be deemed to include mention of the payment of additional amounts provided for in this Section to the extent that, in such context, additional amounts are, were or would be payable in respect thereof pursuant to the provisions of this Section and express mention of the payment of additional amounts (if applicable) in any provisions hereof shall not be construed as excluding additional amounts in those provisions hereof where such express mention is not made.

If the Securities of a series provide for the payment of additional amounts, at least 10 days prior to the first Interest Payment Date with respect to that series of Securities (or if the Securities of that series will not bear interest prior to Maturity, the first day on which a payment of principal and any premium is made), and at least 10 days prior to each date of payment of principal and any premium or interest if there has been any change with respect to the matters set forth in the below-mentioned Officers' Certificate, the Company will furnish the Trustee and the Company's principal Paying Agent or Paying Agents, if other than the Trustee, with an Officers' Certificate instructing the Trustee and such Paying Agent or Paying Agents whether such payment of principal of and any premium or interest on the Securities of that series shall be made to Holders of Securities of that series who are United States Aliens without withholding for or on account of any tax, assessment or other governmental charge described in the Securities of that

series. If any such withholding shall be required, then such Officers' Certificate shall specify by country the amount, if any, required to be withheld on such payments to such Holders of Securities and the Company will pay to the Trustee or such Paying Agent the additional amounts required by this Section. The Company covenants to indemnify the Trustee and any Paying Agent for, to protect and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability, damage or expense reasonably incurred without negligence or willful misconduct on their part arising out of or in connection with actions taken or omitted by any of them in reliance on any Officers' Certificate furnished pursuant to this Section.

## ARTICLE ELEVEN

### REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

#### Section 1101. *Applicability of Article.*

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities) in accordance with this Article.

#### Section 1102. *Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.*

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all the Securities of any series (including any such redemption affecting only a single Security), the Company shall, by delivering an Officers' Certificate at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date, of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed (unless all of the Securities of a specified tenor are to be redeemed). In the case of any redemption of Securities (i) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, or (ii) pursuant to an election of the Company which is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

#### Section 1103. *Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed .*

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed (unless all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed or unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, by such method in accordance with the Depository's applicable procedures and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of Securities of such series of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series or of the principal amount of global securities of such series. If less than all of the Securities of such series and of a

specified tenor are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series and specified tenor not previously called for redemption in accordance with the preceding sentence.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption as aforesaid and, in case of any Securities selected for partial redemption as aforesaid, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

The provisions of the two preceding paragraphs shall not apply with respect to any redemption affecting only a single Security, whether such Security is to be redeemed in whole or in part. In the case of any such redemption in part, the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of the Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed.

*Section 1104. Notice of Redemption.*

Notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided in **Section 106** to the Holders of Securities to be redeemed not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, except that notices of redemption may be sent more than 60 days prior to a redemption date if the notice is issued in connection with the defeasance or satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture.

All notices of redemption shall identify the Securities and state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price,
- (3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of more than a single Security are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption of any such Securities, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed and, if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of a single Security are to be redeemed, the principal amount of the particular Security to be redeemed,
- (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date (unless the Company defaults in the timely deposit of the Redemption Price),
- (5) the place or places where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price,

---

(6) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case; and

(7) applicable CUSIP number, ISIN or “Common Code” number, if any, and that no representation is made by the Trustee as to the correctness or accuracy of the CUSIP number, ISIN or “Common Code” number, if any, listed in such notice or printed on the Securities.

A notice of redemption published as contemplated by **Section 106** need not identify particular registered Securities to be redeemed.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company’s request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company and shall be irrevocable.

In case of any redemption at the election of the Company, the Company will, at least 10 days (unless a shorter notice will be satisfactory to the Trustee) prior to the notice date, notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date.

**Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price.**

Prior to 11:00 a.m. Eastern time on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in **Section 1003**) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

**Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date.**

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest to the Redemption Date; *provided, however, that*, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301**, installments of interests on Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of **Section 307**.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security.

Section 1107. *Securities Redeemed in Part.*

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

Section 1108. *Purchase of Securities.*

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301**, the Company and any Affiliate of the Company may at any time purchase or otherwise acquire Securities in the open market or by private agreement. Such acquisition shall not operate as or be deemed for any purpose to be a redemption of the indebtedness represented by such Securities. Any Securities purchased or acquired by the Company may be delivered to the Trustee and, upon such delivery, the indebtedness represented thereby shall be deemed to be satisfied. **Section 309** shall apply to all Securities so delivered.

## ARTICLE TWELVE

### SINKING FUNDS

Section 1201. *Applicability of Article.*

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of any series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by **Section 301** for such Securities.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of any Securities is herein referred to as a “ **mandatory sinking fund payment** ”, and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities is herein referred to as an “ **optional sinking fund payment** ”. If provided for by the terms of any Securities, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in **Section 1202**. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities as provided for by the terms of such Securities.

Section 1202. *Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.*

The Company (1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption) and (2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as and to the extent provided for by the terms of such Securities; *provided that* the Securities to be so credited have not been previously so credited. The Securities to be so credited shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price, as specified in the Securities so to be redeemed, for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

Section 1203. *Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.*

Not less than 45 days prior (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) to each sinking fund payment date for any Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for such Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities pursuant to **Section 1202** and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. The Trustee shall select any Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in **Section 1103** and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in **Section 1104**. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in **Sections 1106** and **1107**.

## ARTICLE THIRTEEN

### LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

Section 1301. *Company's Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.*

The Company may at its option, at any time elect to have either **Section 1302** or **Section 1303** applied to the Outstanding Securities of any series upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this **Article Thirteen**.

Section 1302. *Legal Defeasance and Discharge.*

Upon the Company's exercise of the option provided in **Section 1301** applicable to this Section, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to the Outstanding Securities of any series on the date the conditions set forth below are satisfied (hereinafter, "**legal defeasance**"). For this purpose, such legal defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by the Outstanding Securities of such series and to have satisfied all its other obligations under the Securities of such series and this Indenture insofar as the Securities of such series are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (A) the rights of Holders of the Securities of such series to receive, solely from the trust fund described in **Section 1304** and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of such series when such payments are due, (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under **Sections 304, 305, 306, 1002** and **1003**, (C) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and the Company's obligations related thereto and (D) this **Article Thirteen**. Subject to compliance with this **Article Thirteen**, the Company may exercise its option under this **Section 1302** notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under **Section 1303**.

Section 1303. *Covenant Defeasance.*

Upon the Company's exercise of the option provided in **Section 1301** applicable to this Section, (i) the Company shall be released from its obligations with respect to the Securities of such series under **Section 801**, **Section 1006** and **Section 1007**, and any covenants provided pursuant to **Section 301** for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities (to the extent so provided pursuant to **Section 301**) and (ii) the occurrence of an event specified in **Sections 501(3)** or **(4)** shall not be deemed to be an Event of Default on and after the date the conditions set forth below are satisfied (hereinafter, "**covenant defeasance**"). For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such Section or clause whether directly or indirectly by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or clause or by reason of any reference in any such Section or clause to any other provision herein or in any other document, but the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

Section 1304. *Conditions to Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.*

The following shall be the conditions to application of either **Section 1302** or **Section 1303** to the then Outstanding Securities of any series:

(1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of **Section 609** who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this **Article Thirteen** applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, (A) money in an amount, or (B) Government Obligations which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants or a nationally recognized investment banking firm expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, (if such firms at such time customarily deliver such certifications, and, if not, such certification may be from the principal financial officer of the Company), to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, the principal of, premium, if any, and each installment of interest on the Securities on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of interest in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of the Securities of such series. For this purpose, "**Government Obligations**" means, with respect to any series of Securities, securities that are (x) direct obligations of the government that issued the currency in which such series is denominated (or, if such series is denominated in euro, the direct obligations of any government that is a member of the European Monetary Union) for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (y) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of such government the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by such government, which, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof and shall also include a depositary receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any Government Obligation where the relevant government is the United States of America or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depositary receipt, *provided that* (except as required by law) such custodian is not

---

authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of such Government Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on such Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

(2) In the event of an election to have **Section 1302** apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (x) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (y) since the date of this Indenture there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of such series will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit, defeasance and discharge and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit, defeasance and discharge had not occurred.

(3) In the event of an election to have **Section 1303** apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of such series will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and covenant defeasance had not occurred.

(4) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, together stating that all conditions precedent provided for relating to either the legal defeasance under **Section 1302** or the covenant defeasance under **Section 1303** (as the case may be) have been complied with.

(5) Such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in the trust arising from such deposit constituting an investment company as defined in the Investment Company Act, or such trust shall be qualified under such act or exempt from regulation thereunder.

(6) At the time of such deposit, (A) no default in the payment of any principal of or premium or interest on any Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing, (B) no event of default with respect to any Senior Debt shall have resulted in such Senior Debt becoming, and continuing to be, due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise have become due and payable (unless payment of such Senior Debt has been made or duly provided for), and (C) no other event of default with respect to any Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing permitting (after notice or lapse of time or both) the holders of such Senior Debt (or a trustee on behalf of such holders) to declare such Senior Debt due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise have become due and payable or; in the case of either *clause (A), (B) or (C)* above, each such default or event of default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist.



Section 1305. *Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions.*

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of **Section 1003**, all money and Government Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee (solely for purposes of this Section and **Section 1306**, the Trustee and any such other trustee are referred to collectively, for purposes of this **Section 1305**, as the “**Trustee**”) pursuant to **Section 1304** in respect of the Securities of such series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities of such series and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of the Securities of such series, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the Government Obligations deposited pursuant to **Section 1304** or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of the Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this **Article Thirteen** to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations held by it as provided in **Section 1304** which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants (or a nationally recognized investment banking firm or the principal financial officer of the Company, as appropriate) expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent legal defeasance or covenant defeasance.

Section 1306. *Reinstatement.*

If the Trustee or the Paying Agent is unable to apply any money in accordance with **Section 1302** or **1303** by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company’s obligations under this Indenture and the Securities of such series shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this **Article Thirteen** until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money in accordance with **Section 1302** or **1303**; *provided, however*, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security following the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of the Securities of such series to receive such payment from the money held by the Trustee or the Paying Agent.

Section 1307. *Deposited Money and Government Obligations to be Held in Trust.*

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of **Section 1003**, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to **Section 301**) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee pursuant to **Section 1304** in respect of any Securities of any series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except as provided herein and except to the extent required by law.

## ARTICLE FOURTEEN

### SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

Section 1401. *Securities Subordinate to Senior Debt.*

The Company covenants and agrees, and each Holder of Securities of any series by the Holder's acceptance thereof, likewise covenants and agrees, that, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth in this Article, subject to the provisions of **Article Four** and **Article Thirteen** and except as may otherwise be specified as contemplated by **Section 301** and set forth in the Securities of a series, the indebtedness represented by the Securities of such series and the payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on each and all of the Securities of such series are hereby expressly made subordinate and junior in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all amounts then due and payable in respect of all Senior Debt of the Company, to the extent and in the manner herein set forth (unless a different manner is set forth for the Securities of such series as contemplated by **Section 301**). No provision of this Article shall prevent the occurrence of any default or Event of Default hereunder.

Senior Debt shall not be deemed to have been paid in full unless the holders thereof shall have received cash, securities or other property equal to the amount of such Senior Debt then outstanding.

Section 1402. *Payment Over of Proceeds Upon Dissolution, Etc.*

In the event of:

- (i) any insolvency, bankruptcy, receivership, liquidation, reorganization, readjustment, composition or other similar proceeding relating to the Company or its property,
- (ii) any proceeding for the liquidation, dissolution or other winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary, or bankruptcy proceedings,
- (iii) any assignment by the Company for the benefit of its creditors, or
- (iv) any other marshalling of the assets of the Company,

all Senior Debt shall first be paid in full before any payment or distribution, whether in cash, securities or other property, shall be made by the Company on account of the Securities of any series. Any payment or distribution, whether in cash, securities or other property (other than securities of the Company or any other corporation provided for by a plan or reorganization or a readjustment, the payment of which is subordinate, at least to the extent provided in these

subordination provisions with respect to the indebtedness evidenced by the Securities of any series, to the payment of all Senior Debt at the time outstanding and to any securities issued in respect thereof under any such plan of reorganization or readjustment), which would otherwise (but for these subordination provisions) be payable or deliverable in respect to the Securities of any series shall be paid or delivered directly to the holders of Senior Debt in accordance with the priorities then existing among such holders until all Senior Debt shall have been paid in full. No present or future holder of any Senior Debt shall be prejudiced in the right to enforce subordination of the indebtedness constituting the Securities of any series by any act of failure to act on the part of the Company.

Section 1403. *Default on Senior Debt.*

If the Company defaults in the payment of any principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Senior Debt when it becomes due and payable, whether at maturity or at a date fixed for prepayment or by declaration or otherwise, then, unless and until such default is cured or waived or ceases to exist, the Company shall make no direct or indirect payment (in cash, property, securities, by set-off or otherwise, but excluding payments in Junior Securities) in respect of the principal of or interest on the Securities of any series or in respect of any redemption, retirement, purchase or other requisition of any Securities of any series.

Section 1404. *Acceleration of Securities.*

In the event of the acceleration of the maturity of the Securities of any series, the holders of all senior debt securities of the Company outstanding at the time of such acceleration, subject to any security interest, shall first be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due on such senior debt securities before the holders of the Securities of such series shall be entitled to receive any payment of principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of such series, other than payments in Junior Securities.

Section 1405. *Payments to be held in Trust.*

If any payment or distribution under the Securities of any series is knowingly received by the Trustee in contravention of any of the terms of this Indenture and before all the Senior Debt has been paid in full (other than payments in Junior Securities to the extent permitted elsewhere in this Indenture), such payment or distribution or security will be received in trust for the benefit of, and paid over or delivered and transferred to, the holders of the Senior Debt at the time outstanding in accordance with the priorities then existing among such holders for application to the payment of all Senior Debt remaining unpaid to the extent necessary to pay all such Senior Debt in full.

Section 1406. *Subrogation to Rights of Holders of Senior Debt.*

Upon the payment in full of all Senior Debt, the rights of the holders of Securities of any series shall be subrogated to all the rights of any holders of Senior Debt to receive any further payments or distributions applicable to the Senior Debt until the Securities of such series shall have been paid in full, and such payments or distributions received by the Holders of Securities of such series by reason of such subrogation, of cash, securities or other property which otherwise would be paid or distributed to the holders of Senior Debt, shall, as between the Company and its creditors other than the holders of Senior Debt, on the one hand, and the Holders of Securities of any series, on the other, be deemed to be a payment by the Company on account of Senior Debt, and not on account of the Securities of such series.

Section 1407. *Provisions Solely to Define Relative Rights.*

The provisions of this Article are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the Holders of Securities of any series on the one hand and the holders of Senior Debt on the other hand. Nothing contained in this article or elsewhere in the Indenture or in the Securities of such series is intended to or shall

(a) impair, as among the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Debt and the Holders of Securities of such series, the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional (and which, subject to the rights under this Article of the holders of Senior Debt, is intended to rank equally with all other general obligations of the Company), to pay to the Holders of Securities of such series the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on, the Securities of such series as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms; or

(b) affect the relative rights against the Company of the Holders of Securities of such series and creditors of the Company, as the case may be, other than the holders of Senior Debt; or

(c) prevent the Trustee or the Holder of any Securities of such series from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article of the holders of Senior Debt to receive cash, property and securities otherwise payable or deliverable to the Trustee or such Holder.

Section 1408. *Trustee to Effectuate Subordination.*

Each Holder of Securities of any series by such Holder's acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on such Holder's behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination provided in this Article and appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

Section 1409. *No Waiver of Subordination Provisions.*

No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Debt to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Company or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Company with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof any such holder may have or be otherwise charged with.

Without in any way limiting the generality of the foregoing paragraph, the holders of Senior Debt may, at any time and from time to time, without the consent of or notice to the Trustee or the Holders of the Securities of any series, without incurring responsibility to the Holders of the Securities of such series and without impairing or releasing the subordination provided in this Article or the obligations hereunder of the Holders of Securities of such series to the holders of Senior Debt, do any one or more of the following:

- 
- (a) change the manner, place or terms of payment or extend the time of payment of, or renew or alter, Senior Debt, or otherwise amend or supplement in any manner Senior Debt or any instrument evidencing the same or any agreement under which Senior Debt is outstanding;
  - (b) sell, exchange, release or otherwise deal with any property pledged, mortgaged or otherwise securing Senior Debt;
  - (c) release any Person liable in any manner for the collection of Senior Debt; and
  - (d) exercise or refrain from exercising any rights against the Company and any other Person.

Section 1410. *Notice to Trustee.*

The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any fact known to the Company which would prohibit the making of any payment to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities of any series pursuant to the provisions of this Article. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article or any other provision of the Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment to or by the Trustee in respect of any Securities of any series pursuant to the provisions of this Article, unless and until the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof from the Company or a holder or holders of Senior Debt or from any trustee therefor; and, prior to the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; *provided, however*, that if the Trustee shall not have received the notice provided for in this Section at least two Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any money may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of any series), then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such moneys and to apply the same to the purpose for which they were received and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary that may be received by it within two Business Days prior to such date.

Subject to the provisions of **Section 603(1)**, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Debt (or a trustee therefor) to establish that such notice has been given by a holder of Senior Debt (or a trustee therefor). In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Debt to participate in any payment of distribution pursuant to this Article, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Debt held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article, and if such evidence is not furnished, the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

Section 1411. *Reliance On Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent.*

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of **Section 603**, and the Holders of Securities of any series shall be entitled to conclusively rely upon any order or decree entered by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such insolvency, bankruptcy, receivership, liquidation, reorganization, dissolution, winding up or similar case or proceeding is pending, or a certificate of the trustee in bankruptcy, receiver, liquidating trustee, custodian, assignee for the benefit of creditors, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the Holders of Securities of such series, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such payment or distribution, the holders of the Senior Debt and other indebtedness of the Company, as the case may be, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article.

Section 1412. *Trustee Not Fiduciary for Holders of Senior Debt.*

With respect to the holders of Senior Debt, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Article, and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to the holders of such Senior Debt shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Debt with respect to its obligations and duties created hereunder and shall not be liable to any such holders or creditors if it shall in good faith pay over or distribute to Holders of Securities of any series or to the Company or to any other Person cash, property or securities to which any holders of Senior Debt shall be entitled by virtue of this Article or otherwise.

Section 1413. *Rights of Trustee As Holder of Senior Debt; Preservation of Trustee 's Rights.*

The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article with respect to any Senior Debt which may at any time be held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Debt, and nothing in the Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

Nothing in this Article shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to **Section 607**.

Section 1414. *Article Applicable to Paying Agents.*

In case at any time any Paying Agent other than the Trustee shall have been appointed by the Company and be then acting hereunder, the term “**Trustee**” as used in this Article shall in such case (unless the context otherwise requires) be construed as extending to and including such Paying Agent within its meaning as fully for all intents and purposes as if such Paying Agent were named in this Article in addition to or in place of the Trustee; *provided, however*, that this Section shall not apply to the Company or any Affiliate of the Company if it or such Affiliate acts as Paying Agent.

Section 1415. *Certain Conversions or Exchanges Deemed Payment.*

For the purposes of this Article only, (a) the issuance and delivery of securities which are subordinate in right of payment to all then outstanding Senior Debt to substantially the same extent as the Securities are so subordinate (“**Junior Securities**”) (or cash paid in lieu of fractional shares) upon conversion or exchange of Securities of any series as contemplated by **Section 301**, shall not be deemed to constitute a payment or distribution on account of the principal of or premium or interest on Securities of such series or on account of the purchase or other acquisition of Securities of such series and (b) the payment, issuance or delivery of cash, property or securities (other than Junior Securities and cash paid in lieu of fractional shares) upon conversion or exchange of Securities of any series shall be deemed to constitute payment on account of the principal of such Securities of such series. Nothing contained in this Article or elsewhere in the Indenture or in the Securities of any series is intended to or shall impair, as among the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Debt and the Holders of Securities of such series the right, which is absolute and unconditional, of the Holder of any Securities of such series to convert or exchange such Securities of such series in accordance with the terms specified as contemplated by **Section 301**.

Section 1416. *Defeasance of This Article Fourteen.*

The subordination of the Securities provided by this **Article Fourteen** is expressly made subject to the provisions for legal defeasance or covenant defeasance in **Article Thirteen** hereof and, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, upon the effectiveness of any such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance, the Securities then outstanding shall thereupon cease to be subordinated pursuant to this **Article Fourteen**.

## ARTICLE FIFTEEN

### MEETING OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

Section 1501. *Purposes for which Meetings may be Called.*

A meeting of Holders of Securities of any or all series of Securities may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series.

Section 1502. *Call, Notice and Place of Meetings.*

(a) The Trustee may at any time call a physical or telephonic meeting of Holders of Securities of any series for any purposes specified in **Section 1501**, to be held at any such time and at such place as the Trustee shall determine. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in **Section 106**, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.

(b) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustee to call a physical or telephonic meeting of the Holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in **Section 1501** and have provided sufficient funds to cover the costs for the delivery of notice of such meeting, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in subsection (a) of this Section.

Section 1503. *Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings.*

Upon the calling of a meeting of Holders with respect to the Securities of a series all or part of which are represented by a Security, a record date shall be established for determining Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series entitled to vote at such meeting, which record date shall be the close of business on the day the notice of the meeting of Holders is given in accordance with **Section 1502**. The Holders on such record date, and their designated proxies, and only such Persons, shall be entitled to vote at such meeting of Holders. To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders, a Person shall (a) be a Holder of one or more Securities or (b) be a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy by a Holder of one or more Securities; *provided, however*, that in the case of any meeting of Holders with respect to the Securities of a series all or part of which are represented by a Security, only Holders, or their designated proxies, of record on the record date established pursuant to **Section 1503** hereof shall be entitled to vote at such meeting. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel and any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

Section 1504. *Quorum; Action.*

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series; *provided, however*, that if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of not less than 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series, the Persons entitled to vote 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes of the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in **Section 1502(a)**, except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of an adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum.



Except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of **Section 902**, any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted by the affirmative vote of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; *provided, however*, that, except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of **Section 902**, any resolution with respect to any consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of not less than 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly convened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid only by the affirmative vote of the Holders of 50% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; and *provided, further*, that, except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of **Section 902**, any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or any adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such series and the related coupons, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

Section 1505. *Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.*

(a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of a series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as is shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in **Section 104** and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in **Section 104** or by having the signature of the person executing the proxy witnessed or guaranteed by any trust company, bank or banker authorized by **Section 104**. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in **Section 104** or other proof.

(b) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing, appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in **Section 1502(b)**, in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.

(c) At any meeting each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by him; *provided, however*, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or proxy.

(d) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly called pursuant to **Section 1502** at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting; and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

Section 1506. *Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.*

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in **Section 1502** and, if applicable, **Section 1504**. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company, and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_



1000 Main Street, 36<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Houston, Texas 77002  
Telephone {713} 226-6000  
Telecopier {713} 228-1331  
porterhedges.com

April 10, 2017

Carriage Services, Inc.  
3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300  
Houston, Texas 77056  
Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel for Carriage Services, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and the subsidiary guarantors named in Schedule 1 hereto (the “**Subsidiary Guarantors**”) in connection with the registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), on a registration statement on Form S-3 (the “**Registration Statement**”) for the offer and sale from time to time, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, of up to \$350,000,000 of: (i) debt securities, in one or more series, consisting of notes, debentures or other evidences of indebtedness (the “**Debt Securities**”), (ii) shares of common stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), (iii) shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the “**Preferred Stock**”), (iv) depositary shares (the “**Depositary Shares**”), (v) warrants (the “**Warrants**”) to purchase Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depositary Shares, purchase contracts (the “**Purchase Contracts**”) and units (the “**Units**”), (vi) subscription rights to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depositary Shares and other securities (the “**Subscription Rights**”), (vii) Purchase Contracts, (viii) Units and (ix) guarantees of non-convertible Debt Securities by a Subsidiary (the “**Guarantees**,” and together with the Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depositary Shares, Warrants, Purchase Contracts, Units and Subscription Rights, each a “**Security**” and collectively the “**Securities**”).

We have examined those records and documents as we have deemed necessary, including but not limited to originals, photocopies or conformed copies of: (i) the Registration Statement (including the exhibits thereto); (ii) the certificate of incorporation and bylaws, each as amended to date, of the Company (the “**Charter Documents**”); (iii) the certificates or articles of incorporation and bylaws of each of the Subsidiary Guarantors that is a Delaware or Texas corporation (the “**Covered Corporate Subsidiaries**”), each as amended to date; (iv) the certificate of formation and limited liability company agreement of each of the Subsidiary Guarantors that is a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Covered LLC Subsidiaries**”) and, together with the Covered Corporate Subsidiaries, the “**Covered Guarantors**”); (v) the corporate and limited liability company proceedings of the Company and the Covered Guarantors; (vi) the forms of Indentures filed as Exhibits 4.2 and 4.3 to the Registration Statement; and (vii) all other certificates, agreements and documents that we have considered relevant and necessary as a basis for the opinions expressed in this letter. In addition, we have made other examinations of law and fact as we considered necessary to form a basis for our opinions.

As to certain questions of fact material to our opinions that we have not independently established, we have relied upon certificates and representations of public officials and upon certificates and representations from officers of the Company and/or the Covered Guarantors.

In rendering the following opinions, we have assumed (i) all information contained in all documents reviewed by us is true and correct, (ii) the genuineness of all signatures on all documents reviewed by us, (iii) the authenticity and completeness of all documents submitted to us as originals, (iv) the conformity to authentic originals of all documents submitted to us as certified or photostatic copies, (v) each natural person signing any document reviewed by us had the legal capacity to do so, and (vi) each Subsidiary Guarantor is duly organized under the laws of its respective jurisdiction of organization and is validly existing and in good standing under the laws of that jurisdiction, none of which facts we have independently verified. We also have assumed the due authorization, execution and delivery of all documents where authorization, execution and delivery are prerequisites to the effectiveness of such documents.

Based on the foregoing, and subject to the assumptions, exceptions and qualifications stated below, we are of the opinion that:

1. With respect to Debt Securities, when (a) the applicable Indenture and any applicable supplemental Indentures have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the trustee, the Company and Subsidiary Guarantors, if any, (b) the Board (defined below) or, to the extent permitted by applicable law, a duly constituted active committee thereof (such board of directors or committee being hereinafter referred to as the “**Board**”) has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance and terms of such Debt Securities, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, and (c) such Debt Securities have been duly executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Indenture and any applicable supplemental Indenture, then such Debt Securities will be legally issued and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

2. With respect to Guarantees, when (a) the applicable Indenture and any applicable supplemental Indentures have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the trustee, the Company and such Covered Guarantor, (b) all necessary corporate, limited liability company or other action by such Covered Guarantor has been taken to authorize the issuance and the specific terms of such Guarantees, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters and (c) such Guarantees have been duly authorized, executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in accordance with the applicable Indenture and any applicable supplemental Indenture, such Guarantees will be legally issued and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Covered Guarantor, enforceable against the Covered Guarantor in accordance with their terms.

3. With respect to shares of Common Stock, when both (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance of the shares of Common Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters and (b) certificates representing the shares of Common Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered (or non-certificated shares of Common Stock shall have been properly issued) either (i) in accordance with the applicable underwriting, purchase or similar agreement or (ii) upon conversion or exercise of any other Security in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exercise as approved by the Board, then the shares of Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

4. With respect to shares of Preferred Stock, when both (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance and terms of the shares of Preferred Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, including the adoption of a certificate of designations relating to such Preferred Stock as required by applicable law (a “*Certificate of Designations*”) and the filing of the Certificate of Designations as required by applicable law, and (b) certificates representing the shares of Preferred Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered (or non-certificated shares of Preferred Stock shall have been properly issued) either (i) in accordance with the applicable underwriting, purchase or similar agreement or (ii) upon conversion or exercise of any other Security in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exercise as approved by the Board, then the shares of Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

5. With respect to Depositary Shares, when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance and terms of the Depositary Shares, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (b) the depositary agreement or agreements relating to the Depositary Shares and the related depositary receipts have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the depositary appointed by the Company pursuant to the applicable depositary agreement, (c) the shares of Preferred Stock underlying such Depositary Shares have been deposited with a bank or trust company under the applicable depositary agreement, and (d) the depositary receipts representing the Depositary Shares have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered in accordance with the applicable depositary agreement, then the Depositary Shares will be legally issued.

6. With respect to Warrants, when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the creation of and the issuance and terms of the Warrants, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (b) the warrant agreement or agreements relating to the Warrants have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the warrant agent appointed by the Company, and (c) the certificates representing the Warrants have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered in accordance with the warrant agreement, then the Warrants will be legally issued and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

7. With respect to the Subscription Rights, when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance and the specific terms of such Subscription Rights, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters and (b) such Subscription Rights, as applicable, and agreements relating to the Subscription Rights have been duly executed and delivered in accordance with the terms thereof, then such Subscription Rights will be valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

8. With respect to Purchase Contracts, when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance and the specific terms of such Purchase Contracts, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters and (b) such Purchase Contracts and agreements relating to the Purchase Contracts have been duly executed and delivered in accordance with the terms thereof, then such Purchase Contracts will be valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

9. With respect to Units, when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance and the specific terms of such Units, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters and (b) such Units and agreements relating to the Units have been duly executed and delivered in accordance with the terms thereof, then such Units will be valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

The opinions expressed above are subject in all respects to the following assumptions, exceptions and qualifications:

A. We have assumed that: (i) the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto (including post-effective amendments) will have become effective under the Securities Act and will comply with all applicable provisions of the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, and such state securities rules, regulations and laws as may be applicable and the Indentures have been qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the “*TIA*”); (ii) the Registration Statement will remain effective and comply with all applicable provisions of the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, and such state securities rules, regulations and laws as may be applicable at the time the Securities are offered or issued as contemplated by the Registration Statement; (iii) a prospectus supplement will have been prepared and filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “*Commission*”) describing the Securities offered thereby and will comply with the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, and state securities rules, regulations and laws as may be applicable at the time the Securities are offered or issued as contemplated by the Registration Statement; (iv) no stop order of the Commission preventing or suspending the use of the prospectus contained in the Registration Statement or any prospectus supplement will have been issued; (v) all Securities will be issued and sold in compliance with the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder and such applicable state securities rules, regulations and laws as may be applicable at the time the Securities are offered or issued as contemplated by the Registration Statement and in the manner stated in the Registration Statement and the appropriate prospectus supplement; (vi) a definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement with respect to any

Securities offered or issued will have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto, and the consideration payable for the Securities sold thereunder shall have been paid to the Company in accordance with such underwriting, purchase or similar agreement; (vii) the consideration paid under any underwriting, purchase or similar agreement for Common Stock or Preferred Stock, including Common Stock or Preferred Stock underlying any Securities, whether in cash, through the issuance of another Security, or a combination of cash or any other Security, shall not be less than the par value of any Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as the case may be, issued under the Registration Statement; (viii) at the time of issuance of any shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock (including any such shares issuable upon the conversion of another Security), the Company has a sufficient number of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as the case may be, under its Charter Documents; (ix) any Securities issuable upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any Security being offered or issued will be duly authorized, created and, if appropriate, reserved for issuance upon such conversion, exchange or exercise; (x) there shall not have occurred any change in law affecting the validity or enforceability of any such Security; and (xi) none of the terms of any Security to be established after the date hereof, nor the issuance and delivery of any such Security nor the compliance by the Company and the Covered Guarantors with the terms of such Security will violate any applicable law or will result in violation of any provision of any instrument or agreement then binding on the Company or any of the Covered Guarantors, or will violate any restriction imposed by a court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any Covered Guarantor.

B. In rendering the opinions in paragraphs 1 and 2, we have assumed that the trustee is or, at the time the applicable Indenture is signed, will be qualified to act as trustee under the applicable Indenture and the TIA and that the trustee has or will have duly executed and delivered the applicable Indenture

C. The enforceability of the Securities and provisions thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, fraudulent transfer, moratorium or other similar laws now or hereinafter in effect relating to or affecting enforcement of creditors rights generally and by general principles of equity (regardless of whether such enforcement is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law). Such principles of equity include, without limitation, concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing, and also the possible unavailability of specific performance or injunctive relief.

D. We express no opinion with respect to: (i) the enforceability of the provisions in the Indentures, or in any agreement or instrument with respect to delay or omission of enforcement of rights or remedies, or waivers of notices or defenses, or waivers of benefits of or other rights that cannot be effectively waived under, applicable laws; (ii) the enforceability of indemnification provisions to the extent they purport to relate to liabilities resulting from or based upon negligence or any violation of federal or state securities laws or blue sky laws; or (iii) the enforceability of Section 110 of the Indentures.



E. The opinions expressed in this letter are limited to the laws of the States of Texas and New York, the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, the Delaware Limited Liability Company Act, and the federal securities laws of the United States of America. We do not express any opinion with respect to the laws of any other jurisdiction. Neil Verma, Legal Counsel of the Company, may rely on this opinion in rendering his opinion dated the date hereof and to be filed as Exhibit 5.2 to the Registration Statement.

We consent to the use of this opinion as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement and to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the prospectus included as a part of the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, we do not admit that this firm is in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Porter Hedges LLP

---

PORTER HEDGES LLP

**Schedule I**  
**Subsidiary Guarantors**

<b>Exact Name of Subsidiary Guarantor</b>	<b>State of Incorporation or Organization</b>
Carriage Funeral Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
CFS Funeral Services, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Holding Company, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Funeral Services of Michigan, Inc.	Michigan
Carriage Funeral Services of Kentucky, Inc.	Kentucky
Carriage Funeral Services of California, Inc.	California
Carriage Cemetery Services of Idaho, Inc.	Idaho
Wilson & Kratzer Mortuaries	California
Rolling Hills Memorial Park	California
Carriage Services of Connecticut, Inc.	Connecticut
CSI Funeral Services of Massachusetts, Inc.	Massachusetts
CHC Insurance Agency of Ohio, Inc.	Ohio
Carriage Services of New Mexico, Inc.	New Mexico
Forastiere Family Funeral Service, Inc.	Massachusetts
Carriage Cemetery Services, Inc.	Texas
Carriage Services of Oklahoma, L.L.C.	Oklahoma
Carriage Services of Nevada, Inc.	Nevada
Hubbard Funeral Home, Inc.	Maryland
Carriage Team California (Cemetery), LLC	Delaware
Carriage Team California (Funeral), LLC	Delaware
Carriage Team Florida (Cemetery), LLC	Delaware
Carriage Team Florida (Funeral), LLC	Delaware
Carriage Services of Ohio, LLC	Delaware
Carriage Team Kansas, LLC	Delaware
Carriage Municipal Cemetery Services of Nevada, Inc.	Nevada
Carriage Cemetery Services of California, Inc.	California
Carriage Insurance Agency of Massachusetts, Inc.	Massachusetts
Carriage Internet Strategies, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Management, Inc.	Delaware
Cochrane's Chapel of the Roses, Inc.	California
Horizon Cremation Society, Inc.	California
Carriage Life Events, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Pennsylvania Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Funeral Management, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Florida Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
Cloverdale Park, Inc.	Idaho
Cataudella Funeral Home, Inc.	Massachusetts
Carriage Services Investment Advisors, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Merger VI, Inc.	Delaware
CSRE Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
PNCA, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Operations, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Services of Tennessee, Inc.	Delaware
Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc.	Louisiana

April 10, 2017

Carriage Services, Inc.  
3040 Post Oak Blvd., Suite 300  
Houston, Texas 77056

Ladies and Gentlemen:

I am Legal Counsel of Carriage Services, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and have acted as counsel to the Company and its subsidiary guarantors (the “**Guarantors**”), of which those entities listed on Schedule 1 hereto are referred to hereinafter as the “**Covered Guarantors**”, in connection with the registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), on a registration statement on Form S-3 (the “**Registration Statement**”) for the offer and sale from time to time, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, of up to \$350,000,000 of: (i) debt securities, in one or more series, consisting of notes, debentures or other evidences of indebtedness (the “**Debt Securities**”), (ii) shares of common stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), (iii) shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the “**Preferred Stock**”), (iv) depository shares (the “**Depository Shares**”), (v) warrants (the “**Warrants**”) to purchase Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depository Shares, purchase contracts (the “**Purchase Contracts**”) and units (the “**Units**”), (vi) subscription rights to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depository Shares and other securities (the “**Subscription Rights**”), (vii) Purchase Contracts, (viii) Units and (ix) guarantees of non-convertible Debt Securities by the Guarantors, including the Covered Guarantors (the “**Guarantees**,” and together with the Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depository Shares, Warrants, Purchase Contracts, Units and Subscription Rights, each a “**Security**” and collectively the “**Securities**”).

For purposes of the opinions I express below, I have examined the originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified: (i) (x) the certificates or articles of incorporation and bylaws of each of the Covered Guarantors that is corporation and (y) the certificate of formation and limited liability company agreement of each of the Covered Guarantors that is a limited liability company; (ii) the form of Indenture filed as Exhibit 4.2 to the Registration Statement to be executed by the Company, as issuer, the Guarantors, as potential subsidiary guarantors, and the trustee thereunder (the “**Senior Indenture**”); (iii) the form of Indenture filed as Exhibit 4.3 to the Registration Statement to be executed by the Company, as issuer, the Guarantors, as potential subsidiary guarantors, and the trustee thereunder (the “**Subordinated Indenture**”); (iv) the Registration Statement and all exhibits thereto and (v) corporate and limited liability company records of the Covered Guarantors, including minute books of the Covered Guarantors, certificates of public officials and of representatives of the Covered Guarantors, statutes and other instruments and documents as I considered appropriate for purposes of the opinions hereafter expressed.

As to various questions of fact material to the opinions expressed below, I have, without independent third party verification of their accuracy, relied in part, and to the extent I deemed reasonably necessary or appropriate, upon the representations and warranties of the Covered Guarantors contained in such documents, records, certificates, instruments or representations furnished or made available to me by the Covered Guarantors.

In connection with this opinion, I have assumed that (i) the Company and the Guarantors will continue to be organized and in existence and good standing in their respective jurisdictions of organization, (ii) the Registration Statement, and any amendments thereto (including post-effective amendments), will have become effective; (iii) no stop order of the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “*Commission*”) preventing or suspending the use of the prospectus contained in the Registration Statement or any prospectus supplement will have been issued; (iv) a prospectus supplement will have been prepared and filed with the Commission properly describing the Securities offered thereby and will have been delivered to the purchaser(s) of the Securities as required in accordance with applicable law; (v) all Securities will be offered, issued and sold in compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws and in the manner stated in the Registration Statement and the appropriate prospectus supplement; (vi) a definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement with respect to any Securities offered will have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company, the Guarantors, if applicable, and the other parties thereto and will be an enforceable obligation of the parties thereto; and (vii) any applicable indenture and indenture supplement entered into in connection with the issuance of Debt Securities will comply with applicable law and be enforceable in all respects in accordance with its terms.

Based on the foregoing, and subject to the limitations and qualifications set forth herein, I am of the opinion that:

1. With respect to senior Debt Securities to be issued under the Senior Indenture and any supplement to such Senior Indenture entered into in the future and any Subsidiary Guarantees of such Debt Securities, the Guarantees of the Debt Securities will constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Covered Guarantors.

2. With respect to subordinated Debt Securities to be issued under the Subordinated Indenture and any supplement to such Subordinated Indenture entered into in the future and any Guarantees of such Debt Securities, the Subsidiary Guarantees of the Debt Securities will constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Covered Guarantors.

I have relied as to matters of federal laws of the United States of America, Delaware, New York and Texas law on the opinion of Porter Hedges LLP of even date herewith and to be filed as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement.

I hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as Exhibit 5.2 to the Registration Statement. I also consent to the reference to me under the heading “Legal Matters” in the prospectuses forming a part of the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, I do not hereby admit I am in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Neil Verma

---

Neil Verma  
Legal Counsel

**Schedule I**  
**Covered Guarantors**

<b>Exact Name of Covered Guarantor</b>	<b>State of Incorporation or Organization</b>
Carriage Funeral Services of Michigan, Inc.	Michigan
Carriage Funeral Services of Kentucky, Inc.	Kentucky
Carriage Funeral Services of California, Inc.	California
Carriage Cemetery Services of Idaho, Inc.	Idaho
Wilson & Kratzer Mortuaries	California
Rolling Hills Memorial Park	California
Carriage Services of Connecticut, Inc.	Connecticut
CSI Funeral Services of Massachusetts, Inc.	Massachusetts
CHC Insurance Agency of Ohio, Inc.	Ohio
Carriage Services of New Mexico, Inc.	New Mexico
Forastiere Family Funeral Service, Inc.	Massachusetts
Carriage Services of Oklahoma, L.L.C.	Oklahoma
Carriage Services of Nevada, Inc.	Nevada
Hubbard Funeral Home, Inc.	Maryland
Carriage Municipal Cemetery Services of Nevada, Inc.	Nevada
Carriage Cemetery Services of California, Inc.	California
Carriage Insurance Agency of Massachusetts, Inc.	Massachusetts
Cochrane's Chapel of the Roses, Inc.	California
Horizon Cremation Society, Inc.	California
Cloverdale Park, Inc.	Idaho
Cataudella Funeral Home, Inc.	Massachusetts
Carriage Services of Louisiana, Inc.	Louisiana

**CARRIAGE SERVICES, INC.**  
**COMPUTATION OF RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES**  
**(unaudited and in thousands)**

	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
Fixed charges:					
Interest expense	\$19,446	\$12,260	\$ 9,325	\$ 9,563	\$10,843
Amortization of capitalized expenses related to debt	685	362	983	996	895
Rental expense factor	1,965	2,180	2,130	2,177	2,027
Total fixed charges	<u>\$22,096</u>	<u>\$14,802</u>	<u>\$12,438</u>	<u>\$12,736</u>	<u>\$13,765</u>
Earnings available for fixed charges:					
Earnings before income taxes	\$19,249	\$24,462	\$22,701	\$34,590	\$32,241
Add fixed charges before capitalized interest	22,096	14,802	12,438	12,736	13,765
Total earnings available for fixed charges	<u>\$41,345</u>	<u>\$39,264</u>	<u>\$35,139</u>	<u>\$47,326</u>	<u>\$46,006</u>
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges (1)	<u>1.87</u>	<u>2.65</u>	<u>2.83</u>	<u>3.72</u>	<u>3.34</u>

- (1) For purposes of computing the ratios of earnings to fixed charges: (i) earnings consist of income from continuing operations before provision for income taxes plus fixed charges (excluding capitalized interest) and (ii) "fixed charges" consist of interest expensed and capitalized, amortization of debt discount and expense relating to indebtedness and the portion of rental expense representative of the interest factor attributable to leases for rental property.

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We have issued our reports dated February 23, 2017 with respect to the consolidated financial statements, schedule, and internal control over financial reporting of Carriage Services, Inc. included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, which are incorporated by reference in this Registration Statement. We consent to the incorporation by reference of the aforementioned reports in this Registration Statement, and to the use of our name as it appears under the caption "Experts."

/s/GRANT THORNTON LLP

Houston, Texas

April 10, 2017